ŠKODA

OWNER´S MANUAL

ŠKODA Superb

Documentation of vehicle delivery

Affix the vehicle data sticker here

3V0012720AD

Date vehicle handover[a)]

☐☐ / ☐☐ / ☐☐☐☐

ŠKODA partner
Stamp and signature of the vendor

I confirm that I have taken delivery of the specified vehicle in good condition, have received information on how to operate it correctly, and have had the terms of the warranty explained to me.

Signature of the customer

Has the vehicle an extended warranty? Yes ☐ No ☐

Limitations of the ŠKODA extended warranty[a)]

Years: _____ or km/mileage: _____

or

Miles: _____

[a)] Due to the requirements of generally binding country-specific regulations, the date of first registration can be specified instead of the date the vehicle handover.

1st vehicle owner

This vehicle with the official registration number
(filled in by the seller)
belongs to:

Title, Name / Company:

Address:

Phone:

ŠKODA partner

Service consultant:

Phone:

2nd vehicle owner

This vehicle with the official registration number
belongs to:

Title, Name / Company:

Address:

Phone:

ŠKODA partner

Service consultant:

Phone:

3V0012720AD

Preface

You have opted for a ŠKODA – our sincere thanks for your confidence in us.

This Owner's Manual contains instructions about the vehicle operation, important information about safety, vehicle care, maintenance and self-help and technical vehicle data.

The operation of some functions and vehicle systems is undertaken via Infotainment.

Please do not read just this manual, but also the Infotainment Owner's Manual carefully as well. The procedure in accordance with the two instructions is a prerequisite for the correct use of the vehicle.

When using the vehicle, the universally applicable country-specific legal requirements (e.g. for transporting children, deactivating the airbag, tyre use, road traffic etc.) must always be observed.

Always pay attention when driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for road safety.

We hope you enjoy driving your ŠKODA, and wish you a pleasant journey at all times.

Your ŠKODA AUTO

Table of Contents

General Maintenance

Do-it-yourself

Technical data

Index

Materials defect liability and ŠKODA warranty for new cars

Materials defect liability
Your ŠKODA Partner, as a vendor, is liable to you for material damage to your new ŠKODA car, ŠKODA Genuine Parts or ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in accordance with statutory regulations and the purchase agreement.

ŠKODA warranty for new cars
As well as the materials defect liability, ŠKODA AUTO a.s. grants you the ŠKODA warranty for new cars (hereinafter referred to as "ŠKODA warranty)," according to the conditions described below.

As part of the ŠKODA warranty, ŠKODA AUTO will ensure the following services.
- Free repair of faulty components or vehicle defects that occur within two years from the start of the ŠKODA warranty.
- Free repair of paintwork defects on your vehicle that occur within three years from the start of the ŠKODA warranty.
- Free repair of rust perforation to the bodywork of your vehicle that occurs within twelve years from the start of the warranty. Only rust perforation of body panels from the inside to the outside is included in the definition of rust perforation on bodywork and covered by the ŠKODA warranty.

The start of warranty is the date on which the first buyer purchases the new cars from the ŠKODA Partner[1]. This date must be noted accordingly by the ŠKODA Partner in the Owner´s Manual for your vehicle » *Documentation of vehicle handover*.

Vehicle repairs may be carried out either by replacing the faulty part or by repairing it. Replaced parts become the property of the ŠKODA Service Partner.

There shall be no further claims arising from the ŠKODA warranty. In particular, there shall be no claims for replacement, cancellation, provision of a courtesy vehicle for the duration of repairs or compensation for damages.

If your ŠKODA vehicle was purchased from a ŠKODA Partner in a country in the European Economic Area (i.e. the countries of the European Union, Norway, Iceland and Liechtenstein) or in Switzerland, claims arising from the ŠKODA warranty must also be made through a ŠKODA Service Partner in one of these countries.

If your ŠKODA vehicle was purchased from a ŠKODA Partner outside the European Economic Area and Switzerland, claims arising from the ŠKODA warranty must also be made through a ŠKODA Service Partner outside the European Economic Area and Switzerland.

One of the conditions for service from the ŠKODA warranty is that all service work has been carried out in a timely and adequate manner and in accordance with ŠKODA AUTO provisions. It must be proven that service work has been carried out properly and in accordance with the ŠKODA AUTO provisions when raising a claim from the ŠKODA warranty. In the event of a missed service or failure to carry out a service according to the ŠKODA AUTO provisions, you may still be entitled to warranty claims as long as you can prove that the missed service or the failure to carry out a service according to the ŠKODA AUTO provisions was not the cause of the defect.

Natural wear and tear to your vehicle is not covered by the ŠKODA warranty. The ŠKODA warranty also does not cover faults to bodywork, installations or conversions provided by third-parties, or vehicle faults caused as a result. The same applies to accessories that are not factory installed and/or delivered.

In addition, this warranty does not apply if the defect was caused by one of the following:
- Unauthorized use, improper handling (e.g. use in racing competitions or overloading), improper care and maintenance or unapproved modification to your vehicle.
- Non-compliance with provisions in the Owner's Manual or other factory-supplied instructions.
- External causes or influences (e.g. accidents, hail, flooding etc.).
- Parts fitted on or in the vehicle whose use has not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO, or modification of the vehicle in a manner not approved by ŠKODA AUTO (e.g. tuning).
- Damage caused by you that was not immediately seen to by a specialist garage or was not rectified properly.

[1] Due to the requirements of generally binding country-specific regulations, the date of first registration can be specified instead of the date the vehicle handover.

It is the customer's responsibility to prove that it was not the cause.

This ŠKODA warranty does not affect the purchaser's statutory rights from materials defect liability from the vehicle vendor and other potential claims from product liability laws.

Mobility warranty
The mobility warranty provides a sense of security when travelling in your vehicle.

As part of the mobility warranty, if your car breaks down when you are on the move as a result of an unexpected fault, you can access services to ensure your continued mobility. These services include the following: breakdown service at the breakdown location and towing to the ŠKODA Service Partner, technical assistance by phone or on-site operation.

If your vehicle is not repaired on the same day, the ŠKODA Service Partner may provide further services as required, such as replacement transportation (bus, train etc.) or a courtesy vehicle etc.

More information regarding terms and conditions for the provision of a mobility warranty for your vehicle can be obtained from your ŠKODA Partner. They will also provide you with detailed terms and conditions for the mobility warranty with respect to your vehicle. In the event that there is no mobility warranty coverage available for your vehicle, you should check with any ŠKODA Service Partner about the possibility of a subsequent agreement.

Optional ŠKODA extended warranty
If you received an extended ŠKODA warranty when purchasing your new car, the two-year ŠKODA warranty will be extended by the time you chose or until the chosen mileage limit has been reached, whichever occurs first.

The previously mentioned paint warranty and the warranty against rust perforation are unaffected by the ŠKODA extended warranty.

The ŠKODA extended warranty does not apply to external and internal foils.

The information on the detailed conditions of the ŠKODA extended warranty is provided by your ŠKODA partner.

Note
The ŠKODA extended warranty is only available in some countries.

On-board literature

The on-board literature always includes the **Owner´s Manual** and **Infotainment Owner´s Manual**.

Owner's Manual
These Owner´s Manual apply to all **body variants** of the vehicle and all related **model versions** as well as all **equipment levels**.

This Owner's Manual describes **all possible equipment variants** without identifying them as special equipment, model variants or market-dependent equipment. Consequently, this vehicle **does not contain all of the equipment components** described in this Owner's Manual.

The level of equipment in your vehicle refers to your purchase contract for the vehicle. For any questions regarding the scope of equipment, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

The **Pictures** in this Owner's Manual are for illustrative purposes only. The illustrations can differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended to provide general information.

ŠKODA AUTO pursues a policy of ongoing product and model development with all vehicles. Changes in terms of supply scope are possible at any time with regard to design, equipment and technology. The information listed in this Owner's Manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

Therefore legal claims cannot be made based on the technical data, illustrations and information contained in this Owner's Manual.

We recommend that the **web pages** that are referred to in this Owner's Manual are displayed using the classic view. If the web pages are displayed using the mobile view, they may not contain all necessary information.

Infotainment Owner´s Manual
The Infotainment Owner's Manual contains a description of the Infotainment service and possibly also some functions and vehicle systems.

Online user manuals

Fig. 1

Read in the QR code » Fig. 1 using the respective application on your external device (e.g. phone, tablet) **or** enter the following address in the web browser to open the website with a model overview of the ŠKODA brand.

http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

- Select the desired model - a menu with the user manuals is displayed.
- Select the construction period as well as the language.
- Select the desired manual - it can be displayed either online or in pdf format.

Notes

Terms used

"Specialist" - Workshop - a workshop that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles. A specialist can be a ŠKODA Partner, a ŠKODA Service Partner, or an independent workshop.

"ŠKODA service partner" - A workshop that has been contractually authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its distribution partner to perform service work on ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

"ŠKODA partner" - A company that has been authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its distribution partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODA Genuine Parts and sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

Text notes

"Press" - Short press (e.g. a button) within 1 s

"Hold" - Long press (e.g. a button) for more than 1 s

Explanation of symbols

- Reference to the introductory module of a chapter with important information and safety warnings
- Situations in which the vehicle must be stopped as soon as possible
- Registered trademark
- Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display
- Text display in the segment display
- → Marker to the next operation step

WARNING

Texts with this symbol draw attention to threats of a **serious accident, injury or loss of life**.

CAUTION

Texts with this symbol draw attention to the risk of vehicle damage or possible inoperability of some systems.

Note

Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

Structure of the Owner´s Manual and further information

Structure of the manual
The Owner's Manual is hierarchically divided into the following areas.

- **Paragraph** (e.g. Operating instructions) - the title of the paragraph is always indicated on the lower left-hand side
  - **Main chapter** (e.g. Checking and refilling) - the title of the main chapter is always indicated on the lower right-hand side
    - **Chapter** (e.g. Engine oil)
      - 🕮 **Introduction to the subject** – Module overview within the chapter, introductory information about the chapter contents, if necessary, valid for all the chapter notes
      - **Module** (e.g. Checking and refilling)

Information search
When searching for information in the Owner´s Manual, we recommend using the **Index** at the end of the Owner's Manual.

Direction indications
All direction indications such as "left", "right", "front", "rear" relate to the forward direction of travel of the vehicle.

Units
The volume, weight, speed and length data are given in metric units, unless otherwise indicated.

Display
In this Owner's Manual, the MAXI DOT display is used as the display in the instrument cluster unless otherwise stated.

Emergency help
In the case of a breakdown, the required breakdown service contact information can be found in the following locations.

- ▸ Contact information from ŠKODA Partner (e.g. window sticker)
- ▸ Infotainment (Phone - breakdown service / information service menu)
- ▸ Mobile application ŠKODA
- ▸ ŠKODA websites

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Definition
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute
ABS	Anti-lock brake system
ACC	Adaptive cruise control
ACT	active cylinder management
AF	Multi-purpose vehicles
AGM	Vehicle battery type
TCS	Traction control
CO_2	Carbon dioxide
COC	Declaration of conformity
DCC	adaptive chassis control
DPF	Diesel particle filter
DSG	Automatic double clutch gearbox
DSR	Active driver-steering recommendation
EDL	Electronic differential lock
ECE	Economic Commission for Europe
EPC	EPC fault light
ESC	Electronic Stability Control
ET	Rim depth
EU	European Union
HBA	Hydraulic brake assist
HHC	Uphill start assist
KESSY	Keyless unlocking, starting and locking
kW	Kilowatt, measuring unit for output
LED	Lighting element type
M1	A passenger car constructed primarily for the transport of people
MCB	Multi-collision brake
MG	Manual gearbox
N1	Panel van intended exclusively or mainly for the transportation of goods

Abbreviation	Definition
NiMH	Nickel metal hydride
Nm	Newton meter, measuring unit for the engine torque
PIN	personal identification number
SCR	Diesel engine for which the AdBlue ® solution is required
TDI CR	Diesel engine with turbo-charging and common rail injection system
TSA	Trailer stabilisation
TSI	Petrol engine with turbo charging and direct injection
VDA	Association of the Automotive Industry (in Germany)
VIN	Vehicle identification number
W	Watt, unit of power
WLAN	Wireless data network
XDS	Functional extension of the electronic differential lock

Safety

Passive Safety

General information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

This section of the manual includes important information on the subject of passive safety. We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, safety of children and anything similar.

Other important safety information can also be found in the following chapters of this Owner´s Manual. The Owner´s Manual should therefore always be in the vehicle.

Before setting off

For your own safety and the safety of the people travelling with you, please pay attention to the following points before setting off.

- Check the function of the lighting and turn signal systems.
- Check the function of the wipers and check the wiper blades for wear. Check the windscreen washer fluid level.
- Ensure that all of the windows offer good visibility to the outside.
- Adjust the rear-view mirror so that vision to the rear is guaranteed. Ensure that the mirrors are not covered.
- Check the tyre inflation pressure.
- Check the engine oil, brake fluid and coolant level.
- Secure all items of luggage.
- Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle.
- Close all doors as well as the bonnet and boot lid.
- Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedals.
- Protect children by using a suitable child seat» page 21, *Transporting children safely*.
- Adopt the correct seated position. Instruct your passengers to assume the correct seated position» page 11, *Correct and safe seated position*.

Driving safety

In the interests of traffic safety, the following information must be observed.

- Do not become distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, (e.g. by your passengers or mobile phone calls).
- Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, (e.g. due to medication, alcohol or drugs).
- Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
- Always adjust the driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.
- Take regular breaks on long journeys (at least every two hours).

Correct and safe seated position

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Always assume the correct seated position before setting off and do not change this position while driving. Also advise your passengers to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this position while the car is moving.

The following list contains instructions for the **Passenger** which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death.

- Do not lean against the dash panel.
- Do not put your feet on the dash panel.

The following list contains instructions for all **Passengers** which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death.

- Do not sit only on the front part of the seat.
- Do not sit facing to the side.
- Do not lean out of the window.
- Do not put your limbs out of the window.
- Do not put your feet on the seat cushion.

WARNING

▪ The front seats and all head restraints must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers.
▪ Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened » page 21, *Transporting children safely* with a suitable restraint system.
▪ The seat backrests must not be tilted too far back when driving, as this will impair the function of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!

WARNING

By sitting incorrectly, the occupant is risking life-threatening injuries.

Correct seated position of the driver

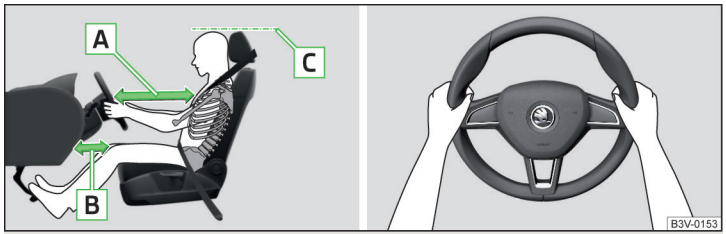

Fig. 2 **Correct seated position for the driver/correct steering wheel position**

Read and observe ! on page 12 first.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Adjust the driver's seat in the forward/back direction so that the pedals can be fully depressed with slightly bent legs.
✓ For vehicles equipped with driver knee airbags, adjust the driver's seat in a forward/back direction so that there is a gap of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dashboard in the vicinity of the knee airbag » Fig. 2 - B.
✓ Adjust the seat backrest so that the highest point of the steering wheel can be reached with your arms at a slight angle.
✓ Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm » Fig. 2 - A.
✓ Adjust the headrest so that the top edge of the headrest is at the same level as the upper part of your head (not for seats with integrated headrests) » Fig. 2 - C.
✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 14, *Using seat belts*.

WARNING

▪ Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel, and a distance of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dash panel at the height of the knee airbag. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
▪ When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the "9 o'clock" and "3 o'clock" position » Fig. 2. Never hold the steering wheel in the "12 o'clock" position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle, inner edge of the steering wheel or similar). Otherwise, in the event of airbag deployment, you could suffer serious injury to the arms, hands and head.
▪ Ensure that no objects are located in the driver's footwell, as they could lodge in the pedal system whilst driving. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or acceleration pedals.

Adjusting the steering wheel position

Fig. 3 **Adjusting the steering wheel position**

Read and observe ! on page 12 first.

The height and forward/back position of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

› Swing the safety lever under the steering wheel in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 3.

› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position. The steering wheel can be adjusted in direction of arrow 2.
› Pull the holder in arrow direction 3 until the stop.

WARNING

▪ Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving only when the vehicle is stationary!
▪ The safety lever must always be locked after adjusting so that the steering wheel cannot accidentally change position – risk of accident!

Correct seated position for the front passenger

Read and observe ! on page 12 first.

For passenger safety and to reduce the risk of injury in an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Position the front passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel so that the airbag offers the greatest possible safety if it is deployed.
✓ Adjust the headrests so that the top edge of the headrest is at the same level as the upper part of the head » Fig. 2 *on page 12* - C (not for seats with integrated headrests).
✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 14.

WARNING

▪ Ensure a distance of at least 25 cm to the dashboard, otherwise the airbag system will not be able to protect you properly - risk of death!
▪ Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven – never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surface of the seats! You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you could suffer fatal injuries by adopting an incorrect seated position!

Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats

Read and observe ! on page 12 first.

For passenger safety on the rear seats and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, the following information must be observed.

✓ Adjust the headrests so that the top edge of the headrest is at the same level as the upper part of the head » Fig. 2 *on page 12* - C.
✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 14, *Using seat belts*.

Seat belts

Using seat belts

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

The seat belts reduce the kinetic energy considerably. They also prevent uncontrolled movements which, in turn, may well result in severe injuries.

When transporting children, observe the following information» page 21, *Transporting children safely*.

WARNING

- Put the seat belt on before starting any journey! This also applies to other passengers - there is a danger of injury!
- Maximum seat belt protection is only achieved if you are correctly seated » page 11, *Correct and safe seated position*.
- The seat backrests of the front seats must not be tilted too far to the rear otherwise the seatbelts can lose their effectiveness.

WARNING

Information on dealing with the safety belts

- The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted, or chafe against any sharp edges.
- Make sure you do not catch the seat belt in the door when closing it.

WARNING

Information on the proper use of safety belts

- Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is roughly positioned across the middle of your shoulder - on no account across your neck.

WARNING (Continued)

- No two persons (also not children) should ever use a single seat belt together.
- The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.
- Many layers of clothing and loose clothing (e. g. a winter coat over a jacket) do not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.
- Do not use clamps or other objects to adjust seat belts (e.g. for shortening the belts for smaller persons).
- The seat belts for the rear seats can only fulfil their function reliably when the seat backrests are correctly locked into position » page 80.

WARNING

Information on the care and maintenance of safety belts

- The belt webbing must always be kept clean. Soiled belt webbing may impair the proper operation of the inertia reel » page 178.
- The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.
- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If parts of the belt system become damaged (e.g. the belt webbing, the belt connections, the inertia reel, the locking part etc.), the respective seat belt must be replaced by a specialist garage immediately.
- Seat belts which have been subjected to stress in an accident must be replaced by a specialist garage. The anchorage points for the belts should also be checked.

Correct routing of seat belt

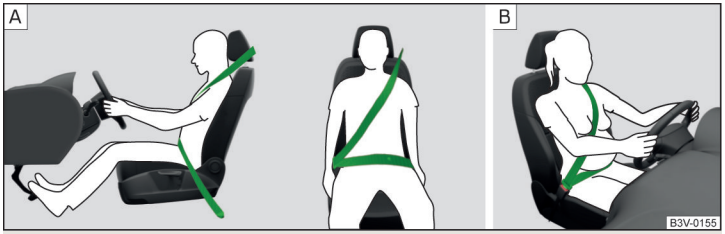

Fig. 4 **Routing of belt webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt/Routing of belt webbing for an expectant mother**

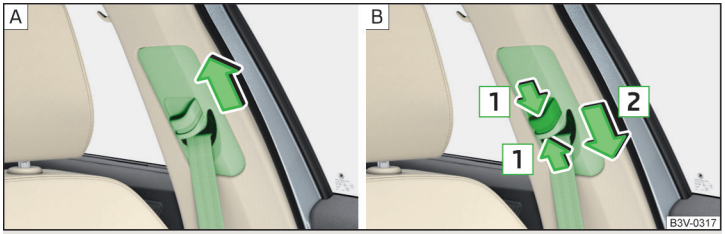

Fig. 5 **Seat belt height adjusters for front seats**

Read and observe ! on page 14 first.

It is important that the belt is properly routed to ensure seat belts offer the maximum protection.

The **shoulder part of the belt** must run approximately over the middle of your shoulder (never across your neck) and fit well against your upper body » Fig. 4 - A.

The **lap part of the belt** must run lap part of the belt must run in front of the pelvis (must never run across your stomach) and must always fit snugly » Fig. 4 - A.

In the case of **pregnant women**, the lap part of the belt must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen » Fig. 4 - B.

Seat belt height adjusters for front seats

› Push the return pulley **upwards** in the direction of arrow » Fig. 5 - A.
› **Or**: push together the mechanism in the direction of arrows 1 and push the return pulley **downwards** in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 5 - B.
› Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place.

! WARNING

- Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then suddenly held firm by the belt.
- The belt webbing must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. spectacles, ball-point pens, keys, etc.). Such objects can cause injury.

Fastening and unfastening seat belts

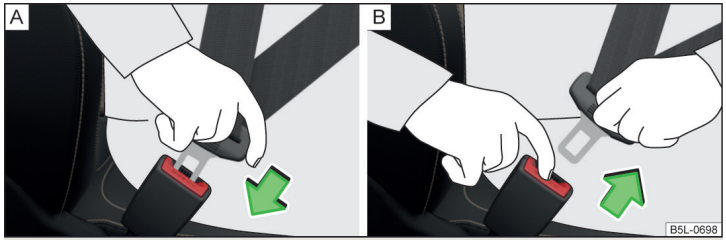

Fig. 6 **Fastening/unfastening the seat belt**

Read and observe ! on page 14 first.

Before fastening

› Adjust the headrest properly (does not apply to seats with integrated headrests).
› Adjusting the seat (applies to the front seats).
› Adjust the belt height (applies to the front seats).

Fasten

› Use the lock tongue to slowly pull the webbing over your chest and pelvis.

› Insert the lock tongue into the belt buckle for the seat » Fig. 6 - A until it audibly clicks into place.
› Pull on the belt to check that it has engaged correctly in the lock.

Release

› Hold the lock tongue and press the red button in the belt buckle » Fig. 6 - B. The lock tongue pops out.
› Feed the belt back manually so that the seat belt is not twisted and the belt webbing rolls up completely.

WARNING

The slot of the belt tongue must not be blocked, otherwise the belt tongue will not lock in place properly.

Belt retractors and belt tensioners, reversible seat belts

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Inertia reel

Each seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel.

When pulling slowly on the seat belt, the belt can move freely. When pulling sharply on the seat belt, the movement is locked by the inertia reel. The belts also lock when full braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

WARNING

If the seat belt does not lock when pulling sharply on it, have the inertia reel inspected immediately by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

The safety for the driver, front passenger and passengers on the outer rear seats **who are wearing their seat belts**, is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels on the front and rear external seat belts.

If there is a collision with a certain severity the seat belts are tightened by the belt tensioner so that unwanted body motion is prevented.

Belt tensioners are **not activated** in the event of **minor** collisions, in the case of a roll-over and also not in accidents in which no major forces are produced.

WARNING

- Any work on the belt tensioner system, including the removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.

Note

- The belt tensioners can also be deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.
- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

Reversible seat belts

Reversible seat belts, as part of the proactive passenger protection system, increase the safety of the **belted up** driver and front passenger.

Reversible seat belts are automatically tensioned in critical driving situations tightly over the body and then released again.

Further information » page 157, *Proactive passenger protection (Crew Protect Assist)*.

Airbag system

Description of the airbag system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

As a supplement to the seat belts, the airbag system provides additional passenger protection in the event of severe frontal and side collisions.

The best possible protective effect of the airbag can only be achieved if the seat belts are applied properly. The airbag is not a substitute for the seat belts.

The functional status of the airbag system is indicated by the warning light in the instrument cluster » page 35.

System description

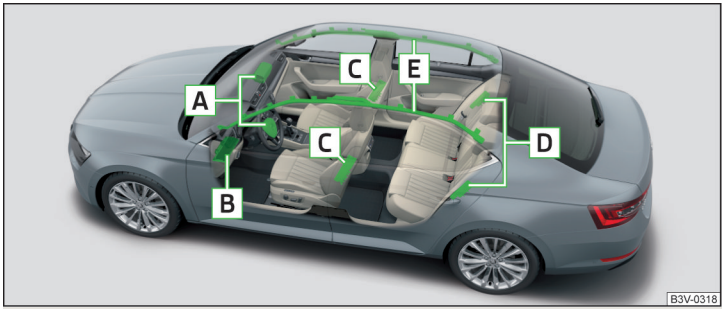

Fig. 7 **Installation locations of airbags**

Installation locations of airbags » Fig. 7

A Front airbags
B Driver's knee airbag
C Front side airbags
D Rear side airbags
E Head airbags

Front airbags - The forward movement of the driver and of the front passenger is cushioned when they make contact with the fully inflated airbag, and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

The front airbags are provided with the lettering **AIRBAG** on the steering wheel and on the dashboard on the front passenger side.

Driver´s knee airbag - The forward movement of the body is cushioned when it makes contact with the fully inflated airbag, and the risk of injury to the legs of the driver is thus reduced.

The knee airbag is provided with the lettering **AIRBAG** on the dashboard on the driver's side.

Side airbags - The load of the occupants is cushioned when plunged into the fully inflated airbag. The risk of injury to the entire upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) is reduced on the side facing the door.

The front side airbags are provided with the lettering **AIRBAG** on the front seat backrests. The rear side airbags are provided with the lettering **AIRBAG** in between the entrance area and the rear seat backrest.

Head airbags - The forward movement of the body is cushioned when it makes contact with the fully inflated airbag, and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

The head airbags are provided with the lettering **AIRBAG** marked on the B-pillar cladding.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the airbag system consists of the following parts.

- Individual airbags.
- Warning light in the instrument cluster» page 35.
- Key switch for the front passenger airbag » page 20.
- Warning light for the front passenger airbag in the middle of the dash panel » page 20.

Airbag deployment

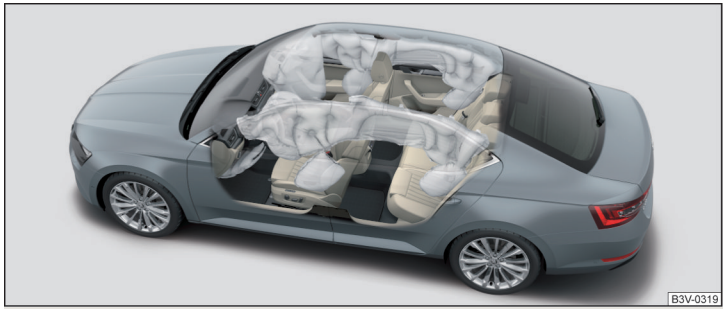

Fig. 8 **Inflated airbags**

The airbag system is only functional when the ignition is switched on.

When triggered, the airbag is filled with gas and unfolds. The inflation of the airbag is carried out in a fraction of a second.

Upon inflation of the airbag, smoke is released. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

Triggering conditions
It is not possible to generally determine which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation. Important here is the hardness of the object on which the vehicle impacts, the impact angle, the vehicle speed, etc.

The deceleration plays an important role in the deployment of the airbags. If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured during the collision remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe frontal collision.
- Driver's front airbag.
- Front passenger airbag.
- Driver's knee airbag.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe side collision.
- Front side airbag.
- Rear side airbag.
- Head airbag.

When an airbag is deployed, the following events occur.
- The hazard warning lights are switched on.
- All doors are unlocked.
- The fuel supply to the engine is interrupted.
- The interior light comes on (if the automatic operation of the interior light is switched on - switch).

When there is no air bag deployment?
With **minor** frontal and side collisions, rear collision, overturning of the vehicle or vehicle roll-over there is no airbag deployment.

Safety instructions

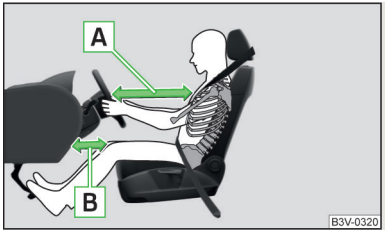

Fig. 9
Safe distance from the steering wheel and the dashboard

WARNING

General information

- **The best possible protective effect of the seat belts and the airbag system can only be achieved in the correct seated position** » page 11.
- The airbag develops considerable forces when triggered, which can lead to serious injuries or even death if the correct seating position or seated position is not observed. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat » page 23.
- If there is a fault, have the airbag system checked immediately by a specialist garage. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.

WARNING (Continued)

- The airbag system must be replaced if it has been deployed.
- In the area of the front airbag and the knee airbag, the surface of the steering wheel and the dashboard should be cleaned using only a dry cloth or one that has been dampened with water.

WARNING

Information about front airbags

- For the driver and front passenger it is important to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel and the dashboard » Fig. 9 - A. If you do not keep this distance, the airbag system cannot protect you - risk of death! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 20, *Deactivating airbags*. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed.
- No other persons, animals or objects may be positioned in front of the occupants on the front seats in the deployment area of the front air bags.
- The steering wheel and the surface of the dashboard on the front passenger side must not have stickers attached, covered or modified in any other way. No parts (e.g. cup holders, mobile phone mounts etc.(should be mounted in the vicinity of the airbag installation locations and in the airbag deployment area.
- Never place objects on the surface of the dashboard on the front passenger side.

WARNING

Information about knee airbags

- Adjust the driver's seat in a forward/back direction so that there is a gap of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dashboard in the vicinity of the knee airbag » Fig. 9 - B. If it is not possible to meet this requirement due to your body size, visit a specialist garage.
- The surface of the airbag module in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. Nothing may be attached to the cover of the airbag module or located within the immediate vicinity.
- Do not attach any bulky and heavy objects (bunch of keys etc.) to the ignition key. These can be ejected by the knee airbag when it is deployed and can cause injuries.

WARNING

Information about for side and head airbags

- No objects (e.g. sun visors turned towards the windows) should be located in the deployment area of the side and head airbags. No accessories (e.g. cup holders etc.) should be fitted to the doors - risk of injury!
- Hang only light clothing on clothes hooks in the vehicle. Do not leave any heavy or sharp objects in the pockets of the clothing. Do not use clothes hangers to hang the clothing.
- The airbag system operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Further information » page 172.
- No excessive forces, such as knocks, kicks etc., should be exerted on the seat backrests - there is a risk of damage to the side air bags. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!
- Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of the type expressly authorized by ŠKODA. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.
- Have any damage to the original seat covers or stitching at the installation point of the side airbags repaired immediately by a specialist garage.

WARNING

Information on the use of the airbag system

- Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the seat) must only be carried out by a specialist garage. Further information » page 172.
- No modifications should be made to parts of the airbag system, to the front bumper or to the body.
- Do not manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.

Deactivating airbags

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Deactivating airbags

The front passenger airbag can be switched off with the key-operated switch » Fig. 10 *on page 20* - A.

We recommend that you ask a ŠKODA service partner to deactivate any other airbags.

The airbag deactivation is displayed by the warning light » page 35.

Deactivating an airbag should be considered in cases such as the ones below.

- If a child seat must be used on the front passenger seat, where the child is transported facing rearward » page 21.
- If it is not possible to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between the middle of the steering wheel and chest, despite the driver's seat being correctly adjusted.
- If special attachments are required in the area of the steering wheel because of a physical disability.
- If different seats have been fitted (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags).

WARNING

If an airbag is deactivated upon the sale of the vehicle, the buyer must be informed of this!

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

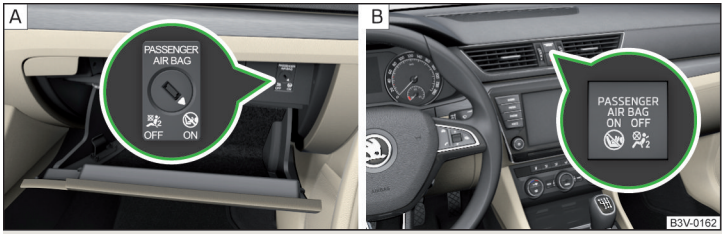

Fig. 10 **Key-operated switch for the front passenger airbag / warning light for front passenger airbag**

Key switch positions » Fig. 10 - A

OFF The front passenger airbag is deactivated - after the ignition is switched on, the warning light OFF » Fig. 10 illuminates - B

ON The front passenger airbag is switched on - after switching on the ignition, the warning light illuminates for 65 seconds ON

Switch off

› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Fold out the key bit **completely**» . With a KESSY key, remove the emergency key.
› Carefully insert the key into the slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch carefully into the position **OFF**.
› Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch » .
› Close the storage compartment on the front passenger side.
› Check that the warning light OFF illuminates after the ignition is switched on.

Switching on

› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage compartment on the front passenger side.
› Fold out the key bit **completely**» . With a KESSY key, remove the emergency key.
› Carefully insert the key into the slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch carefully into the position **ON**.
› Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch » .
› Close the storage compartment on the front passenger side.

› Check that the warning light ON illuminates after the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

- The key cannot be inserted into the key switch while driving. Shocks can cause the key to turn in the slot and trigger the airbag! The airbag can be triggered unexpectedly in an accident - it may result in injury or death!
- The driver is responsible for whether the airbag is switched on or switched off.
- Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off! Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for deactivating the airbag.
- If the warning lights ON OFF flash, the front passenger airbag will not be deployed in the event of an accident! Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.

CAUTION

An insufficiently folded out key bit can damage the key switch!

Transporting children safely

Child seat

Introduction

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, children must be transported in child seats!

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The information in this Owner´s Manual as well as the instructions of the child seat manufacturer must be observed when installing and using the child seat.

For safety reasons, we recommend that you always transport child seats on the rear seats. Children should be transported on the front passenger seat only in exceptional circumstances.

Child seats complying with the ECE-R 44 Economic Commission for Europe standard must be used.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard are provided with a test seal that cannot be removed: large E within a circle with the test number below.

WARNING

- One should never carry children, and also not babies! - on one's lap.
- When leaving the vehicle, do not leave children unattended in the vehicle. They might not be capable of leaving the vehicle or helping themselves independently in the event of an emergency. Very high or low temperatures can be fatal!
- The child must be secured in the vehicle during the entire journey! Otherwise, the child would be thrown through the vehicle in the event of an accident, causing fatal injuries to both the child and other occupants.

WARNING (Continued)

- Children are exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or adopt an incorrect seated position when the vehicle is moving. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front passenger seat as they can suffer severe, or even fatal injuries if the airbag system is deployed!
- Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding the correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are running properly. One should also ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.
- When installing the child seat on the back seat, the corresponding front seat must be adjusted so that there is no contact between the front seat and the child seat or the child being transported in a child seat.
- Before installing a forward-facing child seat with backrest, remove the headrest » page 81. After removing the child seat, refit the head restraints.

Note

We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles. They meet the ECE-R 44 standard.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat

Does not apply to Taiwan

Fig. 11 **Warning stickers**

Read and observe ! on page 21 first.

Never use a rearward-facing child restraint system on a seat which is protected by an active airbag. This could cause serious injury to the child, even death.

This is indicated also on stickers that are located at the following positions.

- On the front passenger's sun visor » Fig. 11 - A.
- On the B-pillar on the front passenger side » Fig. 11 – B.

The following instructions must be followed when using a child seat on the front passenger seat.

- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat » !.
- If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is as vertical, so as to ensure secure contact between the passenger seat backrest and the back of the child seat.
- If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child seat behind it.
- Set the height-adjustable front passenger seat as high up as possible.
- Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.
- With child safety seats in groups 2 and 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.

Adjust the height of the front passenger seat belt so that the belt does not "jam" in the return pulley. In the event of an accident, there is the risk of injury to the neck of the child carried due to the seat belt!

WARNING

- **Never** use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.
- As soon as the child seat, in which the child is transported with their back in the direction of travel, is no longer used in the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag should be switched on again.

Use of the child seat on the front passenger seat

Applies to Taiwan

Fig. 12
Warning stickers

Read and observe ! on page 21 first.

No babies, infants or children to be carried on the passenger seat.

A sticker to this effect can also be found on the front passenger's sun visor » Fig. 12.

Child safety and the side airbag

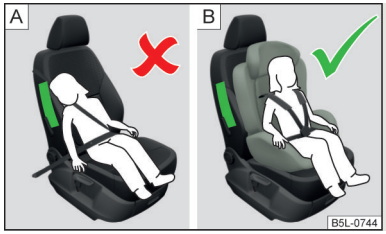

Fig. 13
Incorrect seated position of a child who is not properly secured – risk from the side airbag/Child properly protected by safety seat

Read and observe ! on page 21 first.

The child must not be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag » Fig. 13 - A.

There must be sufficient room between the child and the area into which the side airbag will deploy to allow the airbag to provide as much protection as possible » Fig. 13 - B.

Classification of child seats

Read and observe ! on page 21 first.

Classification of child seats according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

Group	Weight of the child
0	up to 10 kg
0+	up to 13 kg
1	9-18 kg
2	15-25 kg
3	22-36 kg

Use of child safety seats which are secured using a seat belt

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.

Read and observe ! on page 21 first.

Overview of the usability of child seats secured with a seat belt on seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Passenger seat with activated front airbag	Passenger seat with deactivated front airbag	Rear seats External	Rear seat Centre
0 up to 10 kg	X	U[a)]	U	U
0+ up to 13 kg	X	U[a)]	U	U
1 9-18 kg	UF	U	U	U
2 15-25 kg	UF	U	U	U
3 22-36 kg	UF	U	U	U

[a)] Set the height-adjustable front passenger seat as high up as possible.

U The seat is suitable for the use of approved child seats in this weight group category "Universal".
UF The seat is suitable for the use of approved forward-facing child seats in the "Universal" weight group category.
X The seat is not suitable for children in this weight group.

Fastening systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

attachment points of the ISOFIX system

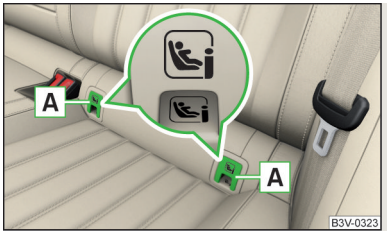

Fig. 14
Labels of the system ISOFIX

ISOFIX represent a system for securing child seats quickly and safely.

Two locking eyes are located between the seat backrest and the seat cushion of the outer rear seats and front passenger seat for fixing the ISOFIX system child seat in place.

First, remove the caps A in order to access the locking eyes» Fig. 14. After removing the child seat, replace he caps.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions of the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the ISOFIX system.
- Never attach other child seats, belts or objects to the attachment points intended for the installation of a child seat with the ISOFIX system – risk of death!

Note

- A child seat fitted with the ISOFIX system can only be mounted in a vehicle fitted with a ISOFIX system if the child seat has been approved for this type of vehicle. Further information is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Child seats with the ISOFIX system can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Use of child safety seats with the ISOFIX system

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.

Overview of the usability of child seats fastened with the ISOFIX system on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Size class of the child seat[a)]	Front passenger seat[b)]	Rear seats outside	Rear seat middle
0 up to 10 kg	E	**X**	**IL**	**X**
0+ up to 13 kg	E	**X**	**IL**	**X**
	D			
	C			
1 9-18 kg	D	**X**	**IL** **IUF**	**X**
	C			
	B			
	B1			
	A			
2 15-25 kg	-	**X**	**IL**	**X**
3 22-36 kg	-	**X**	**IL**	**X**

a) The size category is shown on the label attached to the child seat.

b) If the front passenger seat is fitted with ISOFIXsystem attachment points, it is suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat with "Semi-Universal" approval.

IL The seat is suitable for installation of a ISOFIX child seat with the "Semi-Universal" approval. The "Semi-Universal" category means that the child seat with the ISOFIX system is approved for your vehicle. Observe the list of vehicles that comes with the child seat.

IUF The seat is suitable for the use of approved forward-facing child seats in the "Universal" weight group category.

X The seat is not fitted with ISOFIX system attachment points.

Use of child safety seats with the i-Size- system

Front passenger seat	Rear seats outside	Rear seat middle
X	i-U	X

i-U The seat is suitable for forward and backward facing i-Size child seats of the category "Universal".

X The seat is not suitable for the i-Sizechild seat of the category "Universal".

Attachment points of the TOP TETHER system

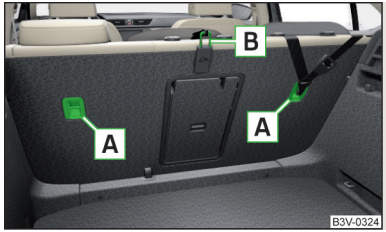

Fig. 15
Attachment points of the TOP TETHER-system

TOP TETHER is a fastening system, which restricts the movement of the upper part of the child seat.

The locking eyes A for attaching the belt of a child seat with the **TOP TETHER** system are located on the rear side of the outer rear seat backrests » Fig. 15.

Some country-specific models can also be equipped with a locking eye B on the back of the middle rear seat backrest » Fig. 15.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the **TOP TETHER** system.
- Only use child seats with the **TOP TETHER** system on the seats with the attachment points.
- Only ever attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye.

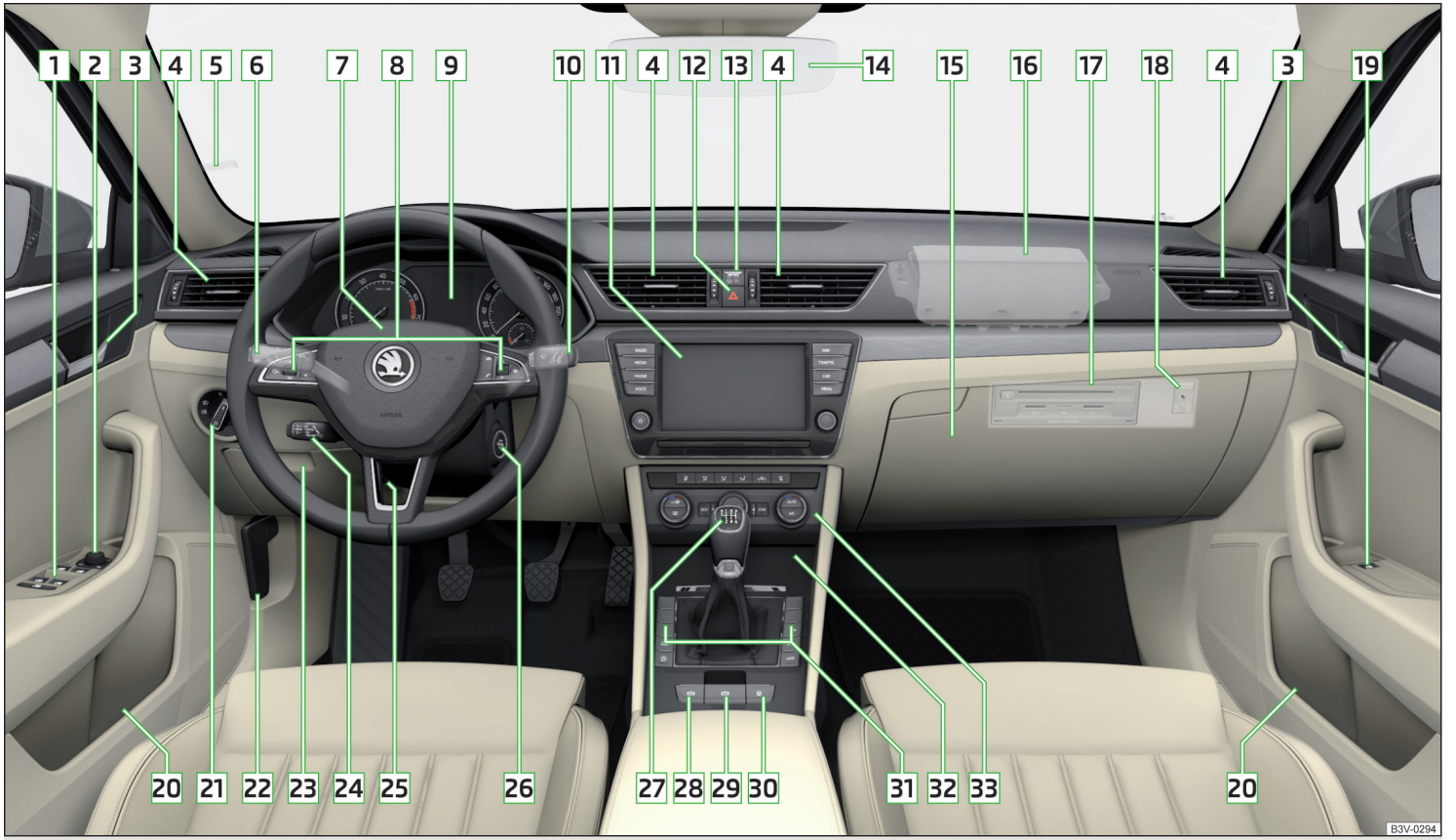

Fig. 16 **Cockpit example for LHD**

Using the system

Cockpit

Overview

1 Electric power windows — 59
2 Electric exterior mirror adjustment — 75
3 Door opening lever — 54
4 Air outlet vents — 113
5 Parking ticket holder — 84
6 Operating lever (depending on equipment):
- Turn signal and main beam — 65
- Speed regulating system — 145
- Speed limiter — 147
- Headlight assistant — 68

7 Steering wheel with horn / with driver's front airbag — 17
8 Buttons for operating the information system — 41
9 Instrument cluster — 30
10 Operating lever:
- Windscreen wipers and washers — 72
- Information system — 41

11 Infotainment » *Owner's Manual for Infotainment*
12 Button for hazard warning light system — 67
13 Warning light for the front passenger front airbag — 20
14 Interior rear-view mirror — 75
15 Storage compartment on the front passenger side — 88
16 Front passenger airbag — 17
17 External Infotainment module (in the front passenger storage compartment) » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*
18 Key switch for switching off the front passenger airbag (in front passenger storage compartment) — 20
19 Electric power window in the front passenger door — 59
20 Storage compartment — 85
21 Light switch — 64
22 Bonnet release lever — 184
23 Storage compartment — 85
24 Operating lever for adaptive cruise control — 150
25 Safety lever for steering wheel adjustment — 12
26 Depending on equipment fitted:
- Ignition lock — 117
- Starter button — 117

27 Depending on equipment fitted:
- Gearshift lever (manual gearbox) — 123
- Selector lever (automatic gearbox) — 124

28 Auto-hold button — 121
29 Button for the electric parking brake — 120
30 Central locking system — 52
31 Bars with buttons (depending on the equipment fitted):
- START-STOP — 118
- Stabilisation control ESC / Traction control TCS — 129, 130
- Selection of travel mode — 155
- Park Assist — 141
- Parking aid — 131

32 Storage compartment — 85
Depending on equipment fitted:
- Phonebox — 86
- 12-Volt power socket — 93
- Cigarette lighter — 95
- Ashtray — 95
- USB and AUX inputs — 86

33 Operation for heating / air conditioning — 110

Note

The layout of the controls on right-hand drive vehicles differs partially from that shown in » Fig. 16.

Instruments and warning lights

Instrument cluster

Introduction

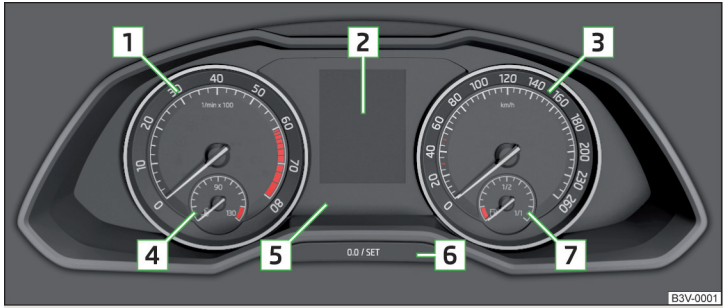

Fig. 17 **Instrument cluster**

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

1 Engine revolutions counter » page 30
- with warning lights » page 31

2 Display » page 41

3 Speedometer
- with warning lights » page 31

4 Coolant temperature gauge » page 30

5 Bar with warning lights » page 31

6 Operation key:
- Setting the time » page 41
- Reset counter for distance travelled (trip) » page 41
- Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval » page 45

7 Fuel gauge » page 31

The brightness of the instrument illumination is set automatically depending on the ambient lighting throughout. If the visibility is poor and the lights are not on, the brightness of the instrument lighting reduces to alert the driver to switch on the lights in due time.

The brightness of the instrument lighting can be activated/deactivated in the » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.

Engine revolutions counter

The tachometer 1 » Fig. 17 *on page 30* shows the actual engine speed per minute.

The beginning of the tachometer red scale range indicates the maximum permitted speed for an engine that has been driven-in and has reached operating temperature.

You should shift into the next highest gear before the red scale of the revolution counter is reached, or select mode **D / S** on the automatic gearbox.

The gear recommendation is important to note in order to maintain the optimum engine speed » page 42.

CAUTION

The pointer of the engine revolutions counter must reach the red area for only a short time - there is a risk of engine damage!

Coolant temperature gauge

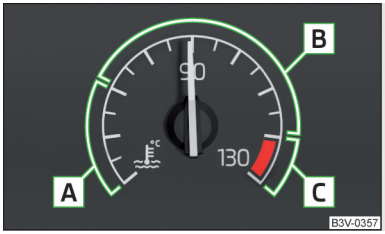

Fig. 18
Coolant temperature gauge

The display » Fig. 18 only works if the ignition is switched on.

Cold range - The pointer is in the range A, the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid high speeds and high engine loads.

Operating range - The pointer is in the range B.

High temperature range - The pointer is in the range C. The coolant temperature is too high. The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster» page 37.

Fuel gauge

Fig. 19
Fuel gauge

The display » Fig. 19 only works if the ignition is switched on.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 66 litres.

If the fuel level reaches the reserve level A » Fig. 19, the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster» page 36.

WARNING

For the vehicle systems to function correctly, and thus for safe driving, there must be sufficient fuel in the tank. Never drain the fuel tank completely – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.

Note

- After filling up, it can occur that during dynamic driving (e.g. numerous curves, braking, driving downhill and climbing a steep hill) the fuel gauge indicates a fraction less.
- The arrow ▶ next to the symbol within the fuel gauge displays the installation location of the fuel filler on the right side of the vehicle.

Display in the rear centre console

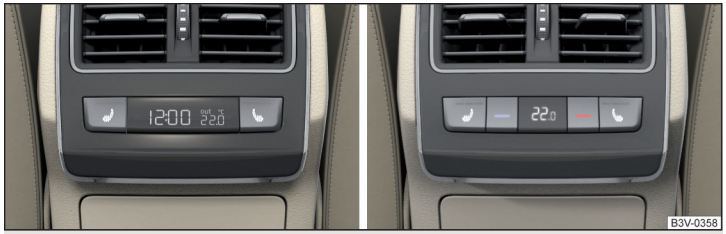

Fig. 20 **Display in rear centre console**

The following information is shown in the display depending on the equipment installed on the vehicle.

- Time
- Exterior temperature information
- Information on the Climatronic set temperature for occupants in the rear seats

Warning lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The warning lights in the instrument cluster indicate certain functions or faults.

Some warning lights can be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the display of the instrument cluster.

After switching on the ignition, some warning lights **light up** briefly as a function test. If the tested systems are OK, the corresponding warning lights go **out** a few seconds after switching on the ignition or after starting the engine.

The warning lights are located at the following positions in the instrument cluster » Fig. 17 *on page 30*.

- Engine revolutions counter 1
- Display 2
- Speedometer 3
- Bar with warning lights 5

Warning lights in the display

Depending on the importance the warning light ⚠ (danger) or ⚠ (warning) illuminate along with some of the warning lights in the list with the warning lights.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, some warning lights can be displayed in colour on the display. For example, the coolant warning light may be represented as follows.

- - Segment display / monochromatic ("black and white") MAXI DOT display
- - Coloured MAXI DOT display

WARNING

- Ignoring illuminated warning lights and related messages or instructions in the display of the instrument cluster may lead to serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning lights » page 67. Place the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 183, *Engine compartment*.

Parking brake

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates - the parking brake is switched on.

Parking brake error

illuminates	M Error: electronic parking Brake S PARKING BRAKE FAULT

- Seek help from a specialist garage.

Parking on a slope that is too steep

illuminates	M Parking brake: gradient too steep. Owner's Manual! S GRADIENT TOO STEEP

▸ Find a parking space on a flat surface or on a slope that is not so steep.

Brake system

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – the brake fluid level in the brake system is too low.

▸ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the brake fluid » page 188.

WARNING

- If warning light illuminates together with warning light » page 34, *Anti-lock braking system (ABS)*, **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – risk of accident!

Front seat belt warning light

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates - the driver or front passenger has not fastened their seat belt.

At a speed of more than approximately 30 km/h, the warning light flashes and an audible warning sounds at the same time.

If the seat belt is not fastened by the driver or front passenger during the next approx. 2 minutes, the warning signal is deactivated and the warning light illuminates permanently.

Adaptive cruise control (ACC)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates - the ACC delay is not sufficient.

▸ Apply the brake.

For more information about the ACC system » page 148.

Power steering / steering lock (KESSY system)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

Fault in the power steering

illuminates – this indicates a complete failure of the power steering and the steering assist has failed (significantly higher steering forces).

illuminates – this indicates a partial failure of the power steering and the steering forces can be greater.

▸ Seek help from a specialist garage.

Steering lock defect (KESSY system)

An audible signal sounds as a warning.

flashes	M Steering lock faulty. Stop! S STOP VEHICLE STEERING FAULTY

▸ Park the vehicle, **stop driving**. After switching off the ignition, it is no longer possible to lock the steering, to activate the electrical components (e.g. Infotainment), to switch on the ignition again and to start the engine. Seek help from a specialist garage.

flashes	M Steering lock: workshop! S STEERING WORKSHOP

▸ Seek help from a specialist garage.

Steering column lock not unlocked (System KESSY)

flashes	M Move the steering wheel! S MOVE STEERING WHEEL

▸ Move the steering wheel slightly back and forth, thereby facilitating unlocking the steering lock.
▸ If the steering does also not unlock then, the help of a specialist garage is required.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after the motor is restarted and a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

▸ Seek help from a specialist garage.

Stabilisation control (ESC) / Traction control (TCS)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

flashes – the ESC or TCS is currently active.

illuminates – there is an ESC or TCS fault.

▸ Seek help from a specialist garage.

If the warning light comes on after starting the engine, the TCS may be switched off for technical reasons.
▸ Switch the ignition off and on again.

If the warning light does not illuminate after you switch the engine back on, the TCS is fully functional again.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery
If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

▸ Seek help from a specialist garage.

For more information on the ESC system » page 129 or TCS system » page 130.

Traction control (TCS) disabled

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – the TCS system is disabled.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – there is an ABS fault.

The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system without the ABS.

▸ Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

- If the warning light illuminates together with warning light » page 33, *Brake system*, **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – risk of accident!

Rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – the rear fog light is switched on.

Emission control system

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – there is a fault in the emission control system. The system enables operation in emergency mode - there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

▸ Seek help from a specialist garage.

Preheating unit (diesel)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

flashes – there is a fault in the engine management system. The system makes possible operation emergency mode - there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

There is a fault in the glow plug system if the warning light does not come on or illuminates continuously.

▸ Seek help from a specialist garage.

EPC warning light (petrol)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

EPC illuminates – there is a fault in the engine management system. The system enables operation in emergency mode - there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

▸ Seek help from a specialist garage.

Safety systems

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

System fault
illuminates - there is a fault in the airbag system.

M **Error: airbag**
S **AIRBAG ERROR**

▸ Seek help from a specialist garage.

The front passenger airbag has been disabled with the key switch
Illuminates for around 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.

One of the airbags or a belt tensioner has been disabled by the diagnostic tool
illuminates for around 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then flashes for approximately 12 seconds.

M **Airbag/ belt tensioner deactivated.**
S **AIRBAG/ BELT TENSIONER OFF**

ProActive passenger protection
illuminates and the following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Proactive passenger protection not available.**
S **PROACTIVE PASSENGER PROTECT NOT AVAIL**

or

M **Proactive passenger protection: function restricted.**
S **LIMITED PROACTIVE PASSENGER PROTECT**

The seat belt for the driver and front passenger needs to be replaced.

▸ Seek help from a specialist garage.

! WARNING
When a fault in the airbag system occurs, there is a risk of the system not being triggered in the event of an accident. Therefore, this must be checked immediately by a specialized garage.

Tyre pressure

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

Change of tyre pressure values
illuminates – there was a pressure change in one of the tyres.

An audible signal sounds as a warning.

▸ Immediately reduce speed and avoid sudden steering and braking manoeuvres.
▸ Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and check the tyres and their inflation pressures » page 192.
▸ Correct the tyre pressure if necessary or replace the affected wheel » page 197 or use the repair kit » page 200.
▸ Save the tyre pressure values in the system » page 164.

System fault
flashes for approximately 1 minute and remains illuminated – there may be a fault in the tyre pressure monitoring system.

▸ Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and start the engine again.

If the warning light flashes after starting the engine again, there is a system error.

▸ Seek help from a specialist garage.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery
If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

▸ Seek help from a specialist garage.

Other incidents
The illumination of the warning light can have the following reasons.
▸ The vehicle is loaded on one side. Distribute the load evenly.
▸ The wheels of one axle are loaded more heavily (e.g. when towing a trailer or when driving uphill or downhill).
▸ Snow chains are mounted.
▸ A wheel has been changed.

CAUTION

Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the warning light can be delayed or does not light up at all.

Brake linings

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates - the brake pads are worn.

▸ Seek help from a specialist garage.

Fuel reserve

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – the fuel level in the fuel tank is at the reserve level (approximately 6 litres).

An audible signal sounds as a warning.

▸ Please refuel » page 180.

Note

The text in the display goes out after refuelling and driving a short distance.

Lane Departure Warning (Lane Assist)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

The warning lights indicates the state of the Lane Assist system.

More information about the Lane Assist System » page 158.

Turn signal system

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

flashes – the left turn signal is turned on.

flashes – the right turn signal is turned on.

If there is a fault in the turn signal system, the warning light flashes at twice its normal rate (does not apply when towing).

When the hazard warning light system is switched on, this will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both warning lights to flash.

Trailer turn signal lights

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

flashes – the trailer turn signal lights are switched on.

If a trailer is hitched and the warning light is not flashing, one of the trailer turn signal lights has failed.

▸ Check the trailer bulbs.

Fog lights

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – the fog lights are switched on.

Speed regulating system / speed limiter

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates - the vehicle speed is limited by the speed regulating system and/or the adaptive cruise control or by the speed limiter.

flashes – the speed set with the speed limiter has been exceeded.

Brake pedal (automatic gearbox)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – apply the brake.

Auto Hold function

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates - the Auto Hold function is activated.

For more information about the Auto-Hold Function » page 121.

Main beam

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – the main beam or the headlight flasher is switched on.

Automatic gearbox

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

Gearbox overheated
The warning light is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

⚠ illuminates	M	**Gearbox overheated. Continue to drive.**
	S	**GEARBOX OVERHEATED**

Gearbox overheated, continued driving is possible.

⚠ illuminates	M	**Gearbox overheated. Stop! Owner´s Manual!**
	S	**STOP VEHICLE GEARBOX OVERHEAT**

▸ **Do not drive the vehicle!** Stop the vehicle and turn off the engine.

You can continue your journey as soon as the warning light disappears.

▸ If the warning light does not go out, do not continue driving. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Transmission problem
The warning light is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

⚠ illuminates	M	**Gearbox faulty. Stop the car safely!**
	S	**GEARBOX FAULTY WORKSHOP**
⚠ illuminates	M	**Gearbox in emergency mode. No reverse gear.**
	S	**GEARBOX ERROR REV_ GEAR NOT AVAIL**
⚠ illuminates	M	**Error: gearbox. Speed is limited.**
	S	**GEARBOX ERROR**

▸ Seek help from a specialist garage.

Rear seat belt warning light

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – a rear seat belt is not fastened.

illuminates – a rear seat belt is fastened.

When the seat belt is fastened/unfastened, the particular light lights up briefly and indicates the current belt status!

Generator

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – the battery is not being charged whilst the engine is running.

▸ Seek help from a specialist garage.

! CAUTION
If, in addition to the light , the light lights up while driving, **stop driving** - risk of engine damage! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Coolant

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

Coolant level too low

⚠ illuminates	M	**Check coolant! Owner's Manual!**
	S	**ENGINE COOLANT PLEASE CHECK**

▸ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and let it cool.
▸ Check the coolant level » page 187, *Checking and refilling*.

If the coolant level is within the specified range and the warning light lights up again, then there may be a malfunction of the cooling fan.

▸ Switch off the ignition.
▸ Check the fuse for the radiator fan, replace if necessary.

If the coolant level and fan fuse are both OK but the warning light illuminates again, **stop driving!**

▸ Seek help from a specialist garage.

Coolant temperature too high

⚠ illuminates	M	**Engine overheated. Stop! Owner´s Manual!**
	S	**ENGINE OVERHEAT STOP**

▸ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and let it cool.
▸ Continue your journey only after the warning light has disappeared.

Engine oil pressure

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

⚠ flashes – the engine oil pressure is too low.

- Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level.
- Even if the oil level is correct, if the warning light flashes, **stop driving!** Also do not leave the engine running at an idling speed.
- Seek help from a specialist garage.

! CAUTION

If, under the given conditions, it is not possible to top up with engine oil, **stop driving** - there is a risk of engine damage! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Engine oil level

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

Engine oil level too low

⚠ illuminates	M	Oil level: add oil!
	S	ADD OIL

- Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level, top up if necessary.

The warning light will go out if the bonnet is left open for more than 30 seconds. If the engine oil is not replenished, the warning light will come on again after driving about 100 km.

Engine oil level too high

⚠ illuminates	M	Reduce oil level!
	S	OIL LEVEL TOO HIGH

- Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level.
- In the event of a high oil level, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Fault on the engine oil level sensor

⚠ illuminates	M	Oil sensor: workshop!
	S	OIL SENSOR WORKSHOP

- Seek help from a specialist garage.

! CAUTION

If, under the given conditions, it is not possible to top up with engine oil, **stop driving** - there is a risk of engine damage! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

AdBlue®

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

AdBlue® level too low

Information on the amount of AdBlue®to be added is also shown. The values "min" and "max" stand for the minimum and maximum AdBlue® replenishment amounts.

illuminates	M	Add AdBlue (DEF)! Range: ...
	S	ADD ADBLUE (DEF) ... RANGE ...

The range in the display indicates the distance that can be driven with the remaining AdBlue® left in the tank.

- Add AdBlue® » page 182.

⚠ illuminates	M	Add AdBlue (DEF)! No start in ...
	S	ADD ADBLUE (DEF)_NO START IN ...

The value in the display indicates the distance that can still be travelled, after which no engine restart is possible unless AdBlue® is added.

- Add AdBlue® » page 182.

⚠ illuminates	M	Add AdBlue (DEF)! Engine start not possible.
	S	ADD ADBLUE (DEF) RESTART DISABLED

It is no longer possible to start the engine.

- Add AdBlue® » page 182.

AdBlue® fault

⚠ illuminates	M	Error: AdBlue (DEF). No engine start in ...
	S	ADBLUE (DEF) ERROR NO START IN ...

There is a fault in the AdBlue® system.

The value in the display indicates the distance to travel, after which no engine restart is possible.

- Seek help from a specialist garage.

illuminates — **M** Error: AdBlue (DEF). Engine start not possible. **S** ADD ADBLUE (DEF) RESTART DISABLED

There is an error in the AdBlue®system, engine start is not possible.

▸ Seek help from a specialist garage.

Lamp failure

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – one of the lamps is faulty.

A message will appear in the display about the affected lamp.

Diesel particle filter (diesel)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

The diesel particulate filter separates the soot particles from the exhaust. The soot particles collect in the diesel particulate filter where they are burnt on a regular basis.

illuminates – the filter is clogged with soot.

To clean the filter, and where traffic conditions permit » !, drive as follows for at least 15 minutes or until the indicator light goes out.

✓ in 4th or 5th gear (automatic gearbox: position **D / S**).
✓ Vehicle speed at least 70 km/h.
✓ Engine speed between 1800 - 2500 rpm.

If the filter is properly cleaned, the warning light extinguishes.

If the filter is not properly cleaned, the warning light does not go out and the warning light begins to flash.

▸ Seek help from a specialist garage.

! WARNING

- Always adjust the speed and driving style to the actual weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions.
- The diesel particulate filter reaches very high temperatures - there is a fire hazard and serious injury could be caused. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come into contact with flammable materials, such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel or the like.

! CAUTION

- As long as the warning light illuminates, one must take into account an increased fuel consumption and a power reduction of the engine.
- Using diesel fuel with an increased sulphur content can considerably reduce the life of the diesel particle filter. A ŠKODA partner will be able to tell you which countries use diesel fuel with a high sulphur content.

i Note

We encourage you to avoid constant short journeys. This will improve the combustion process of the soot particles in the diesel particulate filter.

Windscreen washer fluid level

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – the windscreen washer fluid level is too low.

▸ Top up the windscreen washer fluid » page 185.

Headlight assistant

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – the headlight assistant is activated » page 68.

START-STOPsystem

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

The warning lights indicates the state of the START STOP system » page 118.

Display - a low temperature

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – the outside temperature is below +4 °C.

! WARNING

Even at temperatures around +4 °C, black ice may still be on the road surface! Do not only rely upon the information given on the outside temperature display that there is no ice on the road.

Water in the fuel filter (diesel)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

The fuel filter with water separator, filters out dirt and water from the fuel.

If too much water is present in the separator, the following information appears on the instrument cluster display.

The warning light is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

⚠ illuminates	**Water in the fuel filter. Owner´s Manual!**
	WATER IN FUEL FILTER

▸ Seek help from a specialist garage.

Adaptive cruise control (ACC)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

The warning lights ! indicate the condition of the ACC system » page 148.

Distance warning (Front Assist)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

The warning light is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

illuminates – the safe distance to the vehicle in front is below the minimum.

Information on the Front Assist system» page 153.

Advance warning / Emergency braking (Front Assist)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – the system has recognized the risk of a collision or has automatically triggered emergency braking » page 153.

Economy mode

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

eco illuminates - the vehicle is in economy mode due to the intervention of the active cylinder management or due to the neutral position of the automatic gearbox.

Adaptive Chassis Control (DCC)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

The warning light is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

⚠ illuminates – there is a DCC fault.

▸ Seek help from a specialist garage.

Service

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – information regarding a service appointment that is due » page 45, *Service interval display*.

Information system

Driver information system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Display in the instrument cluster

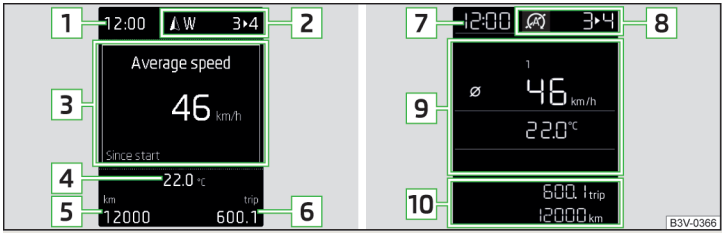

Fig. 21 **Display types: MAXI DOT / segment display**

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the information system uses the display in the instrument cluster to provide the following information » Fig. 21.

1 Time / symbols of the Infotainment voice control
2 Engaged gear / gear recommendation
Selector lever positions for the automatic gearbox
Warning lights of the START-STOP system
Compass display
Detected traffic signs
3 Driving data (multifunction display)
Warning lights
Information messages
Door alarm
Eco tips
4 Outside temperature
5 Speed regulating system / speed limiter
Total distance travelled
6 Distance travelled by resetting the memory (trip)
7 Time
8 Warning lights of the START-STOP system
Engaged gear / gear recommendation
Selector lever positions for the automatic gearbox
9 Outside temperature
Warning lights
Driving data (multifunction display)
10 Total distance travelled
Distance travelled by resetting the memory (trip)
Speed regulating system / speed limiter
Service interval display
Information messages

Door, luggage compartment and bonnet alarm
When the door or luggage compartment / bonnet is open, a graphic warning appears in the display.

An acoustic signal will also sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h when a door is open.

Reset counter for distance travelled (trip)
› Press button A » Fig. 22 *on page 41*.

Setting the clock

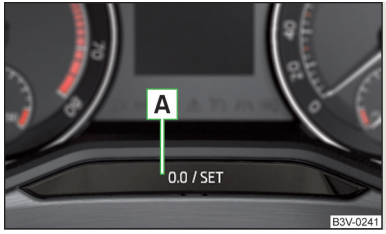

Fig. 22
Button in the instrument cluster

› Switch-on the ignition.
› Press and hold the button A » Fig. 22 until the time is shown in the display.
› Release the button A and the system switches to the hour setting function.
› Press the button A again and set the hours.

› Wait around 4 seconds - the system switches to the minutes setting.
› Press the button A again and set the minutes.
› Wait around 4 seconds - the system switches to the initial setting.

The time can also be set in Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.

Gear recommendation

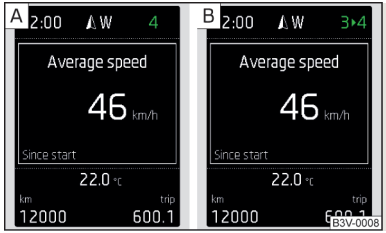

Fig. 23
Information on the selected gear / Gear recommendation

A suitable gear or perhaps a gear recommendation with respect to the service life of the engine and the driving efficiency is displayed.

Display » Fig. 23

A Optimal gear engaged

B Gear recommendation (e.g. 3 ▶ 4 means that it is advantageous to switch from 3rd to 4th gear)

For vehicles with automatic transmission the recommended gear will be shown provided the mode for manual switching (Tiptronic) is selected.

! WARNING

The driver is always responsible for selecting the correct gear in different driving situations, such as overtaking.

Auto-check control

Certain functions and conditions of individual vehicle systems are checked continuously when the ignition is switched on. If there is a fault in the system, the following message will appear in the display of the instrument cluster.

While the operational faults remain unrectified, the messages are always indicated again. After the message is displayed for the first time, the warning lights ⚠ (danger) or ⚠ (warning) continue to be displayed.

Operation of the information system

Operation via the operating lever

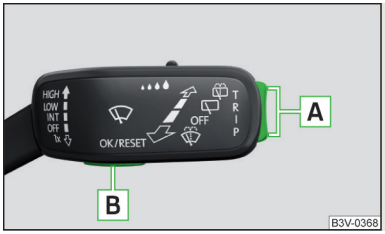

Fig. 24
Buttons on the operating lever

Operating the multifunction display

A **Press** (up or down) - select data / set values

B **Press** - display / confirm indication

Operating the MAXI DOT display

A **Press** (up or down) - move to the selected menu
Hold (up or down) - display main menu

B **Press** - confirm selected menu item

Operation via the multifunction steering wheel

Fig. 25 **Buttons/dials: on the multifunction steering wheel**

Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel

Switch on/off voice control

A **Turn** - sets the volume
Press - sound on / off

▷ Skip to next track/station
◁ Switch to previous track/station
Display the assistance systems menu
Press - display the telephone menu; accept/end the call; select contact
Hold - repeat last call; reject call

Operating the multifunction display

B **Turn** - select data / set values
Press - display / confirm indication

Operating the MAXI DOT display

Hold - display main menu
Press - return to a previous level in the menu
B **Turn** - move in the selected menu
Press - confirm selected menu item

Note

Depending on equipment not all functions may be available. The system indicates this by means of a text message in the Infotainment display.

Driving data (Multifunction display)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The driving data display is only possible with the ignition switched on. After the ignition is switched on, the function that was last selected before switching off the ignition is displayed.

If vehicles with MAXI DOTdisplay do not show the driving data after switching on the ignition, select the menu item **Driving data** in the main menu and confirm » page 44, *MAXI DOT display*.

The units and the display of some information can be set in Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.

Note

The setting of the information display is stored in the active user account personalisation » page 46.

Information overview

Overview of driving data (depending on the vehicle equipment).

Range - drive distance in km which can be covered with the existing tank capacity and with the same driving style. If you drive more efficiently this value can increase.

AdBlue® range - drive distance in km which can be covered with the existing AdBlue®tank capacity and with the same driving style. If you drive more efficiently this value can increase.

Average fuel consumption - is calculated continuously since the last time the memory was deleted. After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 100 m driven.

Current fuel consumption - when the vehicle is stationary or slowly moving, the fuel consumption is displayed in l/h (--,- km/l appears on models for some countries).

Oil temperature - if the temperature is lower than 50 °C or if there is a fault in the system for checking the oil temperature, the **–––** symbols are displayed.

Warning when the preset speed is exceeded - allows the setting of a speed limit where, if exceeded, an acoustic warning signal and a warning message appears on the display of the instrument cluster.

Traffic sign recognition - traffic signs display » page 162, *Traffic sign recognition*.

Current speed - digital speedometer.

Average speed - is calculated continuously since the last time the memory was deleted. After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 300 m driven.

Driving route - distance driven since the last time the memory was deleted.

Driving time - driving time since the last time the memory was deleted.

Comfort consumers - information about the total consumption of the comfort consumers in l/h and a list of three consumers (e.g. air conditioning etc.), which have the largest share of fuel consumption.

Warning when exceeding the set speed

The system offers the possibility to set a speed limit beyond which an acoustic warning signal will sound and the following warning message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Adjust the speed limit while the vehicle is stationary

› Select the menu item **Warning at** at (M) or (S) and confirm.
› Set the desired speed limit is 5 km/h steps.
› Confirm the set value, or wait several seconds; your settings will be saved automatically.

Adjusting the speed limit while the vehicle is moving

› Select the menu item **Warning at** at (M) or (S) and confirm.
› Drive at the desired speed.
› Confirm the current speed as the speed limit.

The set speed limit can be manually adjusted later if needed.

Reset the speed limit

› Select the menu item **Warning at** at (M) or (S) and confirm.
› By confirming the stored value, the speed limit is reset.

The speed limit set mode is stored even after the ignition is switched off and on. After a gap between driving exceeding 2 hours, the pre-set speed limit is deactivated.

Memory

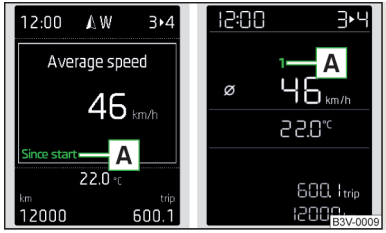

Fig. 26
Memory display: MAXI DOT display (M) / Segment display (S)

The system saves the data in the three memories described below which are displayed at the position A» Fig. 26.

Since start (M) Or "1" (S)
In the memory, driving data is saved for the time between switching on and switching off the ignition. New data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information if the trip is continued **within 2 hours** after switching off the ignition.

If the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**, the memory is automatically erased.

Long-term (M) And "2" (S)
The memory gathers driving data from any number of individual journeys up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes driving time or 9999 kilometres driven.

The indicator is automatically set back to zero if one of the indicated values is exceeded.

Since refuel (M) or "3" (S)
The driving data is stored in the memory since the last fuel refuelling.

The memory is erased automatically the next time you fill up.

› For the **Storage choice**, repeatedly confirm the selected indication and select the desired memory.
› For **Deleting the memory** for the selected information, hold down the button confirming the specification.

The following driving data are stored.
▸ Average fuel consumption.
▸ Distance driven.
▸ Average speed.
▸ Driving time.

i Note
Disconnecting the vehicle battery will delete all memory data.

MAXI DOT display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The MAXI DOT display is a user interface which, depending on the equipment configuration, provides information about the Infotainment, the multifunction display, the assistance systems etc.

The menus with details can be operated and displayed using the buttons on the operating lever or the multifunction steering wheel » page 42.

Main menu items (depending on vehicle equipment)
- **Driving data** » page 43
- **Assist systems** » page 45
- **Navigation** » page 45
- **Audio** » page 45
- **Telephone** » page 45;
- **Vehicle** » page 42, *Auto-check control*

Note

- If warning messages are displayed, these messages must first be confirmed to access the main menu.
- The display language can also be set in Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual -Infotainment*.

Menu itemNavigation

The following information is displayed in the **Navigation** menu item.

- Driving recommendations
- Compass
- Last destinations

Menu itemAudio

The following information is displayed in the **Audio** menu item.

Radio
- Currently playing station (name/frequency).
- The selected frequency range (e.g. FM) optionally with the number of the station button (e.g. FM3), if the station is stored in the memory list.
- List of available stations (if more than 5 stations can be received).
- TP traffic announcements.

Media
- Name of the track being played, if necessary, further information regarding title (e.g. artist, album name), if this information is stored as a so called ID3 tag on the audio source.

Menu itemTelephone

The call list with the following symbols is displayed in the **Telephone** menu item.

Incoming call
Outgoing call
Missed call

Symbols in the display

Charge status of the telephone battery[1)]
Signal strength[1)]
A telephone is connected to the unit
Missed calls (if there are several missed calls, the number of calls is shown next to the symbol)
Switch-off microphone

Menu itemAssist systems

The following systems are activated/deactivated in the **Assist systems** menu item.

- Front Assist
- Lane Assist
- Rear Traffic Alert
- Assist system for blind spot monitoring

Service interval display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

[1)] This function is only supported by some mobile phones.

The service interval display shows the kilometres or days until the next service event.

Information regarding the service intervals » page 173.

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval

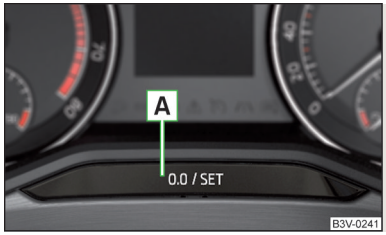

Fig. 27
Button in the instrument cluster

› Switch-on the ignition.
› Press and hold the button A » Fig. 27 until the **Service** is shown in the display.
› Release the button A.

In the display, the symbol appears for 4 seconds along with the following message for the kilometres or days to the next service appointment.

The details regarding the remaining kilometres or days until the next scheduled service can also be displayed in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.

Service messages

Messages before reaching the scheduled service date
Before the next service date has been reached, the symbol as well as a message about the mileage or days until the next service event appears in the display after switching on the ignition.

Messages upon reaching scheduled service date
Once the service interval is reached, the symbol appears in the display after the ignition is switched on, together with the message:

Resetting the service interval display

We recommend that the display reset is completed by a specialist garage.

We recommend that you do not reset the service interval display yourself. Incorrectly setting the service interval display could cause problems to the vehicle.

Variable service interval
For vehicles with variable service intervals, after resetting the oil change service display in a specialist garage, the values of the new service interval are displayed, which are based on the previous operating conditions of the vehicle.

These values are then continuously matched according to the actual operating conditions of the vehicle.

Personalisation

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Thanks to the personalisation, more drivers have the opportunity to use a vehicle with individually set system functions by means of a user account which is assigned to the respective vehicle key.

WARNING
Make all adjustments when the vehicle is stationary - otherwise there is the risk of accident!

Function

Fig. 28
Switching to a different user account

Read and observe ! on page 46 first.

After unlocking the vehicle and opening the driver's door, all the personalised functions are adjusted according to the user account that is assigned to the key which was used to unlock the vehicle.

Any change to the set personalised functions is automatically stored in the active user account.

As part of the personalisation, three default user accounts as well as a **guest**account are provided.

Switch to a different user account
You can switch to a different user account in the instrument cluster display » Fig. 28 within 10 seconds after turning on the ignition.

An account can be changed at a later time in Infotainment CAR → → **Vehicle status** → (if the **Tyre Pressure Monitoring Syst.** is displayed first of all, then use the arrow ◁ or ▷ switch to **Vehicle status**).

If an account is selected in which not all of the points required by the system are set, a configuration wizard can be automatically displayed in the Infotainment display » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*

Electrically adjustable driver's seat (referred to only as seat in the following)
The seated position adjustment is carried out in the following cases.
- After unlocking the vehicle and opening the driver's door.
- After switching to a different user account and at a speed less than 5 km/h.

The seat adjustment can be terminated as follows.
- By tapping on the function surface **Cancel** in the Infotainment display.
- By pressing any key on the seat » page 78.

Note
Vehicles with the personalisation function are provided with three vehicle keys.

Overview of some of the personalisation functions

Read and observe ! on page 46 first.

- Driving mode - the last selected mode, mode setting **Individual**
- Setting the electrically adjustable driver's seat.
- Exterior mirror adjustment.
- Assistance systems - Lane Assist, parking aid (Park Pilot).
- Light - ambient lighting, convenience turn signal, COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME.
- Climatronic - temperature in each individual area, fan speed, recirculation mode.
- Infotainment settings - brightness level of the screen, keyboard arrangement.
- Radio - sound settings, station sorting.
- Media - shuffle / repeat title, selected video format.
- Voice control - acoustic signals.
- Navigation - home address, alternative routes, recommended route, reminder of the lack of fuel.

Note
The scope of the personalisation functions is dependent on the type of Infotainment package.

Setting the personalisation

Read and observe ! on page 46 first.

› Tap on the Infotainment function surface CAR → → **Personalisation**.

The following menu items are displayed.

Personalisation
Active - activate/deactivate the personalisation

Select a user account
A list of user accounts with the option to manage user accounts and to switch to another account.

- > - Account management with the following options:
  - **Rename user account** - rename the user account (not applicable to the **Guest** account)
  - **Copy settings to another account** - copy the settings of an active user account to another user account
  - **Reset user account** - reset the selected user account to factory settings

Adjusting

- **Key assignment:** - options for assigning the vehicle key to the user account:
  - **Manual** - detected vehicle key must be assigned to the active user account manually
  - **Automatic** - detected vehicle key automatically assigned to a different account of the active user account
- **Assign vehicle key to current user account** - manual assignment of the detected vehicle key to the active user account - follow the instructions in the Infotainment display
- **Reset all** - reset the personalisation and the user accounts to factory settings

SmartGate

Introduction to the subject

Fig. 29
QR code with reference to the ŠKODA websites

SmartGate is a system that transmits certain driving data (such as fuel consumption, speed or similar) via Wi-Fi or Wi-Fi Direct.

The ŠKODA applications installed in a supported external device (e.g. telephone, tablet) give the option to further transmit the received data.

Some ŠKODA applications can be displayed in the Infotainment display by means of a SmartLinkconnection » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.

Read in the QR code » Fig. 29 using the respective application on your external device **or** enter the following address in the web browser to open the website with an overview of the available applications, compatible devices and other information about SmartGate.

http://go.skoda.eu/connectivity-smartgate

CAUTION

- To increase the access security to the transmitted vehicle data, once the ŠKODA application has been started, you are requested to change the password/PIN code if the default password/PIN code has not yet been changed » page 49, *Password/PIN code*. It is not possible to start the ŠKODA application without having made this change.
- ŠKODA accepts no responsibility for any problems caused by incompatibility or improper functioning of the external devices.

Connection to SmartGate using Wi-Fi

This type of connection is intended for external devices running Android and iOS operating systems.

Connecting to an Android external device

› Switch on the ignition.
› Switch on Wi-Fi in the external device that is to be connected and search for available Wi-Fi networks (see Owner´s Manual for the external device).
› In the menu of the detected networks, select the "SmartGate_..."[1] menu item.
› Enter the password (vehicle identification number using uppercase letters» page 49).
› In the external device that is to be connected to, start the SmartGate application.
› Then follow the instructions in the manual, which is included in the SmartGate application.

With SmartGate, a maximum of four external devices can be connected simultaneously using Wi-Fi, with as many launched ŠKODA applications as required.

Connecting to an external iOS device

› Switch on the ignition.
› Switch on Wi-Fi in the external device that is to be connected and search for available Wi-Fi networks (see Owner´s Manual for the external device).
› In the menu of the detected networks, select the "SmartGate_..."[1] menu item.

[1] The last 6 characters of the vehicle identification number of your vehicle are displayed at position ....

› Enter the password (vehicle identification number using uppercase letters» page 49).

With SmartGate, a maximum of four external devices can be connected simultaneously using Wi-Fi. In these external devices, up to four ŠKODA applications can be started simultaneously.

Disconnection
The connection can be switched off in one of the following ways.

› Switch off the ignition for longer than 5 seconds (for vehicles with a starter button, switch off the engine and open the driver's door).
› End the connection in the SmartGate application.
› Switch off Wi-Fi in the connected external device.

Automatic connection
If the communication device has already had a connection with SmartGate, then the connection is automatically restored under the following conditions.

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ Wi-Fi is switched on in the external device that is to be connected to.
✓ The external device that is to be connected to stores the password required for the connection check.

Connection to SmartGate using Wi-Fi direct

This type of connection is intended for external devices running the Android operating system.

Establishing a connection
› Switch on the ignition.
› In the external device that is to be connected to, start the SmartGate application.
› In the application, change the connection type to Wi-Fi direct.
› Then follow the instructions in the manual, which is included in the SmartGate application.

The password for the connection to SmartGate _...[1] includes the last six digits of the vehicle identification number » page 49.

With SmartGate, a maximum of two external devices can be connected simultaneously using Wi-Fi direct, with as many launched ŠKODA applications as required.

If you want to connect to SmartGate in a different vehicle, you must make a new connection in the SmartGate application.

Disconnection
The connection can be switched off in one of the following ways.

› Switch off the ignition for longer than 5 seconds (for vehicles with a starter button, switch off the engine and open the driver's door).
› End the connection in the SmartGate application.
› Switch off Wi-Fi in the connected external device.

Automatic connection
If the external device once had a connection with SmartGate, then the connection is automatically restored after the ignition is started.

SmartGate web interface

SmartGate parameters can be set in the SmartGate web interface.

The following address must be entered in the web browser of the external device that is connected with SmartGate.

HTTP://192.168.123.1

The setting changes are only effective after tapping the buttons "Save" → "Reboot".

Password/PIN code

The password for the **Wi-Fi** connection preset by the factory is the complete vehicle identification number (entered in upper case); the PIN code for the **Wi-Fi direct** connection is the last 6 digits of the vehicle identification number.

After changing the password/PIN, the connection to SmartGate must be re-established on the external device to be connected using the new password or new PIN code.

Changing the password for the Wi-Fi connection
› Open the SmartGate web interface » page 49, *SmartGate web interface*.
› In the "WPA / WPA2 key:" menu item, enter the new password (8 to 63 alphanumeric characters and special characters, small and capital letters).
› Confirm the password change by tapping on the "Save" button.

[1] The last 6 characters of the vehicle identification number of your vehicle are displayed at position ....

› Restart SmartGate by tapping on the "Reboot"[1] button.

Changing the PIN code for the Wi-Fi Direct connection

› Open the SmartGate web interface » page 49, *SmartGate web interface*.
› In the "Wi-Fi direct PIN:" menu item, enter the new PIN code (6 digits).
› Confirm the PIN code change by tapping on the "Save" button.
› Restart SmartGate by tapping on the "Reboot"[1] button.

Note

If you have forgotten your password/PIN code for connecting to SmartGate, SmartGate must be reset to the factory settings in a specialist workshop.

Unlocking and opening

Unlocking and locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The vehicle is equipped with a central locking system which makes it possible to unlock / lock **all** the doors, the fuel filler flap and boot lid simultaneously.

The door unlocking can be adjusted individually » page 53.

The **unlocking** of the vehicle is displayed by the turn signal lights flashing twice.

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 45 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically.

The **locking** of the vehicle is displayed by the turn signal lights flashing once.

If the driver's door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

If the doors or the boot lid remain open after the vehicle has been locked, the turn signal lights do not flash until they have been closed.

[1] If the "Reboot" button is not displayed, you must manually restore the web browser display.

WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons (e.g. children) could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - there is a danger of injury and accidents!
- When leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. These individuals might not be able to leave the vehicle on their own or to help themselves. Can be fatal at very high or very low temperatures!

CAUTION

- Each key contains electronic components; therefore it must be protected against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the keyway clean. Impurities (textile fibres, dust, etc.) have a negative effect on the functionality of the locking cylinder and ignition lock.

Unlocking/locking with the remote control key

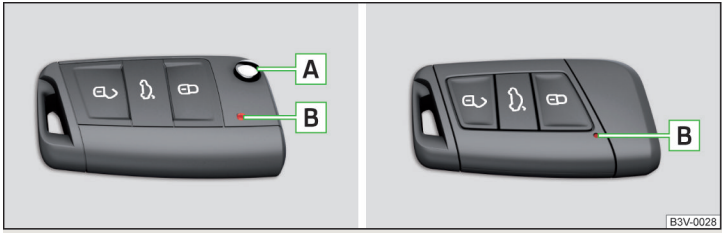

Fig. 30 **Key with fold/out key bit/KESSY key**

Read and observe and on page 51 first.

Description of the key » Fig. 30

- Unlock button
- Lock button
- Depending on equipment fitted:
  - ▸ Unlock/unlatch the boot lid (vehicles fitted with manual folding operation)
  - ▸ Open/close/ the boot lid Stop movement of the boot lid (vehicles with electric folding operation)

A Locking button for folding the key bit in/out

B Warning light for the battery charge - if the warning light does not flash when a button on the key is pressed, the battery is discharged.

Unlock/unlatch the boot lid (vehicles fitted with manual folding operation)
By pressing the button, the lid is unlocked.

By holding the button, the lid is unlocked and unlatched (partially open).

If the lid is unlocked or unlatched using the button, then the lid is automatically locked after closing. The period after which the lid is locked can be set » page 56.

CAUTION

- The remote control may be affected by signal superposition of transmitters that are in the vicinity of the vehicle.
- The effective area of the remote control key is around 30 m. If the central locking on the remote control responds from a distance of less than around 3 m, the battery must be replaced» page 205.

Removing the KESSY emergency key

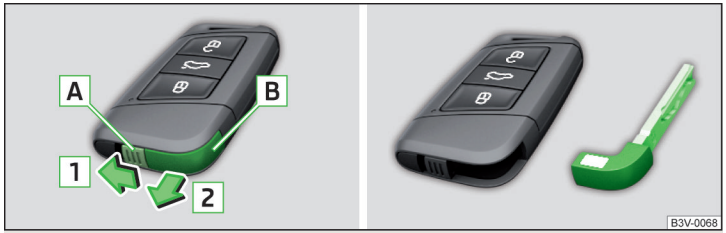

Fig. 31 **KESSY key**

Read and observe and on page 51 first.

The emergency key is, for example, intended for the operation of the child safety, and for switching off/on the front passenger airbag.

› Remove retainer tabs A in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 31.
› Remove the emergency key B in the direction of the arrow 2.

Unlocking/locking - KESSY

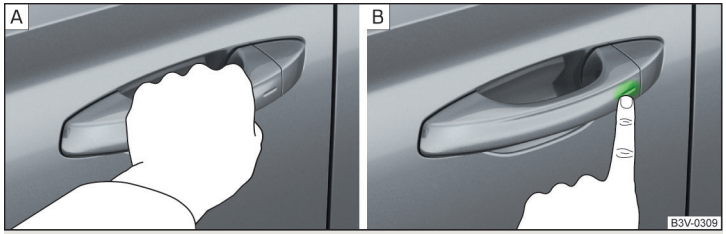

Fig. 32 **Vehicle unlocking / vehicle locking**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

The KESSY system (Keyless Entry Start Exit System) enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key.

› Grip the door handle to **unlock** » Fig. 32 - A the vehicle.
› Touch the sensor on the door handle with your finger to **lock** » Fig. 32 - B the vehicle.

When unlocking/locking the vehicle, the key must be at a maximum distance of approximately 1.5 m from the front door handle.

Information on locking
On vehicles fitted with automatic gearbox, the selector lever must be moved into the position **P** before unlocking.

The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside if the ignition has not been turned off.

After locking the vehicle, it is not possible to unlock within the next 2 seconds by touching the door handle. This can be used to check whether the vehicle is locked.

Protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle
If one of the doors is closed after the vehicle has been locked and the key with which the vehicle was locked remains in the passenger compartment, the vehicle will be automatically unlocked. After automatically unlocking, the turn signal lights will flash four times. If no door is opened within 45 seconds, the vehicle is automatically locked again.

If the boot lid is closed after locking the vehicle and the key with which the vehicle was locked remains in the luggage compartment, the lid is automatically unlatched (partially opened). After automatically unlocking, the turn signal lights will flash four times. The boot lid **remains unlatched** (partially opened); the other doors remain locked.

! CAUTION
Some types of gloves can affect the unlocking or locking device via the sensors in the door handle.

Locking/unlocking the vehicle with the central locking button

Fig. 33
Central locking button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

Conditions for the locking/unlocking using the central locking button.
✓ The vehicle is not locked from the outside.
✓ None of the doors are open.

› To **lock/unlock**, press the » Fig. 33 button.

Locking is displayed in the button by the illumination of the symbol.

The following applies after locking.
▸ Opening the doors and the boot lid from the outside is not possible.
▸ The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever of the respective door.

! WARNING
Doors locked from the inside make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

SafeLock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

SafeLock prevents the doors from behind opened from inside as well as window operation. This makes it more difficult for anyone to break into the vehicle.

Switching on
SafeLock switches on when the vehicle is locked.

This function is pointed out by the following message on the display of the instrument cluster after the ignition is switched off.

M **Check SAFELOCK! Owner´s Manual!**

S **CHECK SAFELOCK**

Switch-on display
With the activated SafeLock, the warning light in the driver´s door flashes for 2 seconds in rapid succession, this then starts to flash at longer intervals.

Switching off
- By locking twice within 2 seconds.
- **or:** By deactivating the interior monitor and the towing protection » page 55.

The warning light in the driver´s door flashes fast for about 2 seconds, goes out and starts to flash at longer intervals after about 30 seconds.

If the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system is switched off, the door can be opened separately from the inside by a single pull on opening lever.

The safelock switches on the next time the vehicle is locked.

! WARNING

If the car is locked and the safe securing system activated, no people must remain in the car as it will then not be possible to either unlock a door or open a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

Individual settings

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

The following functions of the central locking system can be set individually in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.

All doors
The function allows you to unlock all doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap.

Single door
The function allows you to unlock only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap with the radio remote control. KESSY allows the unlocking of a single door which is in the vicinity of the key, as well as the fuel filler flap. The other doors and the boot lid are only unlocked once the door handle is unlocked or touched.

Doors on a vehicle side
This function enables you to unlock both doors on the driver's side and the fuel filler flap with the radio remote control unit. KESSY allows the unlocking of both doors which are in the vicinity of the key, as well as the fuel filler flap. The other doors and the boot lid are only unlocked once the door handle is unlocked or touched.

Automatic locking/unlocking
This function enables the locking of all doors and the boot lid from a speed of 15 km/h. Opening the doors and the boot lid from the outside is not possible.

The renewed unlocking of the doors and the boot lid is carried out when the ignition key is removed or when the door is opened from inside (depending on the individual setting for the central locking system).

i Note

The individual adjustment of the central locking system is stored (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 46.

Opening/closing a door

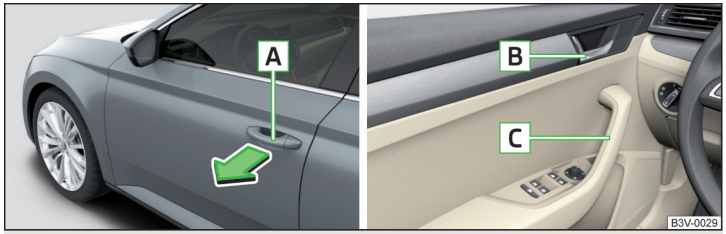

Fig. 34 **Door handle/door opening lever**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

› To **open from outside**, unlock the vehicle and pull the door handle A in the direction of arrow » Fig. 34.
› To **open from inside**, pull on the door opening lever B and push the door away from you.
› To **close from inside**, grip the handle C and close the door.

! WARNING

- The door must be closed properly, otherwise it could open whilst driving - risk of death!
- Only open and close the door when no one is located in the opening/closing range – risk of injury!
- Never drive with the doors open - it can be fatal!
- An opened door can close automatically if there is a strong wind or the vehicle is on an incline – risk of injury!

i Note

On vehicles with door warning lights, these illuminate after the door is opened.

Child safety lock

Fig. 35 **Switching on/off the parental control: rear door left/right**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

The child safety lock prevents the rear door from being opened from the inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

› To **switch on**, turn the parental control with the vehicle key in position » Fig. 35.
› To **switch off**, turn the parental control with the vehicle key in position .

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

Synchronise remote control

If the buttons on the remote control key have been operated several times beyond the effective range of the system or the battery in the remote control key has been replaced and the vehicle cannot be unlocked using the remote control, the key must be synchronised.

› Press any button on the remote control key.
› Unlock the door with the key in the lock cylinder within 1 minute of pressing the button.

Fault with the central locking

If the warning light in the driver's door initially flashes quickly for around 2 seconds, and then illuminates for 30 seconds without interruption before flashing again slowly, you will need to seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

A fault in the central locking system means the vehicle doors and the boot lid cannot be emergency locked or emergency unlocked» page 207.

Failure of the system KESSY
If there is a fault in the KESSY system, the appropriate error message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Low voltage of the key battery
If the voltage of the key battery is too low, a message appears in the display of the instrument cluster referring to the need to replace the battery. Replace the battery » page 205.

Anti-theft alarm system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals if an attempt is made to break into the vehicle (hereafter referred to as alarm).

The alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked. This is automatically disabled after release.

CAUTION
Before leaving the vehicle, it must be checked that all of the windows, doors and the sliding/tilting roof are locked in order to ensure the full functionality of the anti-theft alarm system.

Note
The alarm system has its own power source, whose service life is 5 years.

Alarm trigger

Read and observe ! on page 55 first.

The alarm is triggered when one of the following unauthorised actions is activated on the vehicle with an activated warning system.
- Opening the bonnet.
- Opening the boot lid.
- Opening the doors.
- Manipulation of the ignition lock.
- Towing the vehicle.
- Movement in the vehicle.
- Sudden and significant voltage drop of the electrical system.
- Uncoupling the trailer.

An alarm is triggered also when the driver's door is unlocked and opened by the lock cylinder.

The alarm is switched off by pressing the button on the key or switching on the ignition.

Interior monitor and towing protection

Fig. 36
Button for interior monitor and towing protection

Read and observe ! on page 55 first.

The **interior monitor** detects movements inside the locked vehicle and then triggers the alarm.

The **anti-towing** detects tilts in the locked vehicle and then triggers the alarm.

Both systems should be deactivated if there is a possibility that the alarm will be triggered by movements (e.g. by people or animals) within the vehicle interior or if the vehicle has to be transported (e.g. by train or ship) or towed.

Deactivate
› Switch off the ignition and open the driver's door.
› Press the button on the centre column on the driver side » Fig. 36; the symbol illuminates in the button.
› Lock the vehicle within 30 seconds.

Disabling the two systems switches off SafeLock.

CAUTION
The opened glasses storage compartment reduces the effectiveness of the interior monitor. To ensure the full functionality of the interior monitor, the glasses storage compartment must always be closed before locking the vehicle.

Boot lid with manual operation

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- Never drive with the boot lid open or ajar, as otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the lid. Otherwise, the lid might open suddenly while the vehicle is moving, even if the lid was locked – risk of accident!
- Make sure that when closing the boot lid, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!
- Do not press on the rear window when closing the boot lid, it could crack – risk of injury!

Open/close boot lid

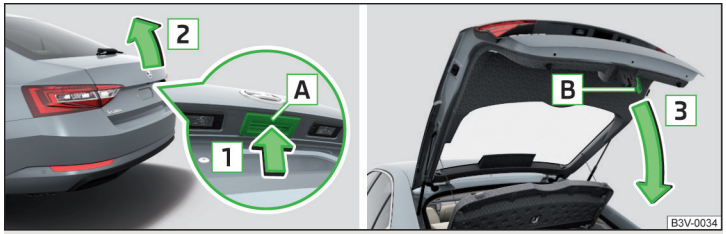

Fig. 37 **Opening / closing tailgate**

Read and observe ! on page 56 first.

› To **open**, press the A button in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 37.
› Raise the lid in the direction of the arrow 2.
› To **close**, grab the mount B and pull in the direction of arrow 3.

Note

Button A » Fig. 37 is deactivated when starting or at a speed of more than 5 km/h. The button is activated again after the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

Setting the delayed locking of the boot lid

Read and observe ! on page 56 first.

If the boot lid is unlocked with the button on the key, the lid is automatically locked again after closing.

The period after which the boot lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

CAUTION

There is a risk of unwanted entry into the vehicle before the boot lid is locked automatically.

Electric boot lid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The boot lid (hereinafter as lid) can be operated electrically and manual in the event of an emergency » page 58.

WARNING

- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the lid. Otherwise, the lid might open suddenly while the vehicle is moving, even if the lid was locked – risk of accident!
- Never drive with the lid open or unlatched, as otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Only open and close the lid when no one is located in the opening/closing range – risk of injury!

WARNING (Continued)

- Make sure that no limbs are caught or crushed when closing the lid - risk of injury!
- When you open the boot lid make sure that there are no persons in the opening area of the lid - there is a danger of injury!

CAUTION

- Do not attempt to close the lid manually during the electrical closing process - there is a risk of damaging the electric lid operation.
- When washing the vehicle in a car wash, we recommend that you lock the vehicle (with the central locking button). In some car washes the boot lid might open automatically due to the pressure action of the washing brushes - there is a risk of damage to the vehicle interior.

CAUTION

- Check that no objects are located in the opening/closing area which could hinder the movement (e.g. cargo on the roof rack or on the trailer etc.) - there is a risk of damage to the lid!
- In certain circumstances, if the lid is loaded (e.g. by a thick layer of snow), the opening process of the lid can be interrupted. Remove the snow from the lid to re-enable the electrical operation.
- If the lid closes automatically (e.g. under load of snow), you will hear an intermittent beep.
- The flap is always to be close before disconnecting the battery.

Description of operation

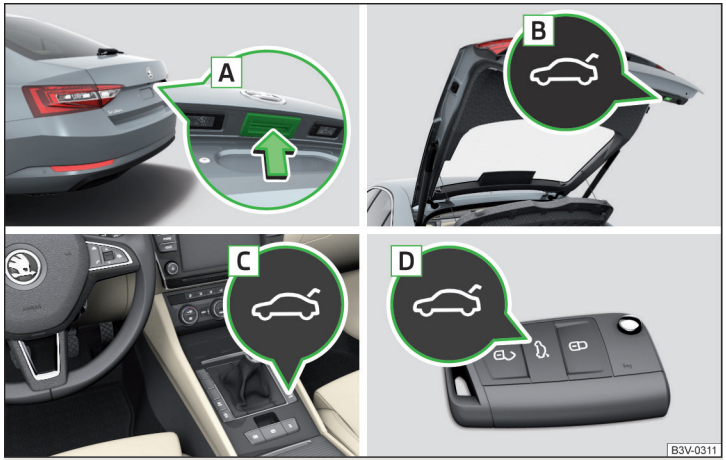

Fig. 38 **Lid operation**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 56 first.

Ways to open the lid

- By pressing the handle A » Fig. 38.
- By holding the button C.
- By holding the button D on the key.

If the lid hits an obstacle when closing, it stops and an audible signal sounds.

Ways to close the lid

- Press pressing the button B » Fig. 38.
- By holding the button D on the key (applies to vehicles with KESSY). The key must be located at a maximum distance of 2 m from the lid.
- By pressing the handle A.
- By briefly pressing the lid downwards.
- If the lid hits an obstacle when closing, it stops and an audible signal sounds.

Ways to stop the lid movement

- By pressing the button B.
- By pressing the button C.

▸ By holding the button D on the key.
▸ By pressing the handle A.

Audible signals
An acoustic signal is sounded when opening/closing the lid by means of the button C or D.

Note

▪ Button A » Fig. 37 *on page 56* is deactivated when starting or at a speed of more than 5 km/h. The button is activated again after the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.
▪ If you rapidly enter the vehicle during the opening or closing process of the lid, the whole vehicle may jerk and, as a result, the movement of the lid can be interrupted.

Set the top position of the lid

Read and observe ! and ! on page 56 first.

The top position of the lid can be adjusted (e.g. in a limited space to open the lid due to the garage height or for a more comfortable operation, depending on the height of the person).

Adjusting the top position of the lid
› Stop the lid in the desired position.
› Press and hold button B » Fig. 38 *on page 57* until you hear an acoustic signal.

Adjusting the top starting position of the lid
› Carefully raise the flap manually to the limit.
› Press and hold button B » Fig. 38 *on page 57* until you hear an acoustic signal.

Note

The top position which is reached when the lid opens automatically, is always lower than the maximum top position which can be reached when the lid is opened manually.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 56 first.

Examples of operational malfunctions

Description of the malfunction	Remedy
The lid cannot be opened	Unlocking the lid » page 208
The lid does not react to an opening signal	Removing a possible obstacle (e.g. snow), re-opening the lid » page 57 Press the handle A » Fig. 38 *on page 57* and pull the lid upwards
The lid remains in the top position	Manual closing of the lid
The lid is open and the battery was disconnected	

Close manually
Close the door slowly, push down the lid, push in the lock on the centre of the edge, above the ŠKODA logo.

Operate boot lid contactless

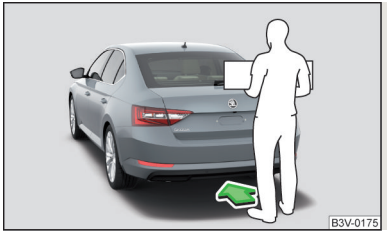

Fig. 39
Opening the boot lid

Read and observe ! and ! on page 56 first.

Depending on equipment the boot lid can be operated without contact.

The ignition must be switched off and you have to have the vehicle key on your person.

› To **open/close**, move one foot in the sensor area below the rear bumper quickly in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 39.

The brake light in the rear window illuminates and the lid opens/closes automatically. An acoustic signal is sounded when opening/closing the lid.

If the lid does not move, then repeat the operating process after a few seconds.

The lid movement can be stopped by a rapid swinging of the foot. Swinging the foot again will continue the lid movement.

This function can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.

We recommend that the function is deactivated in the following cases:
- Installation of a roof rack.
- Coupling a trailer.
- Manual vehicle wash.
- Maintenance and repair work in the back of the vehicle.

When connecting a device to the trailer socket the deactivation of the function takes place.

Note

With heavy rain or a dirty rear bumper, under certain circumstances that there may be limitations, or the automatic deactivation of the contactless opening function of the boot lid may occur.

Window operation

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The windows in the doors can be operated electrically using the buttons on the doors.

WARNING

- Always close the window carefully and controlled. Otherwise this can cause severe crushing injuries.
- The system is fitted with a force limiter » page 60. If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres. However, the windows should be closed carefully – risk of injury.

CAUTION

- Keep the windows clean to ensure the correct functionality of the electric power windows.
- Always close the windows before disconnecting the battery.

Note

If the windows are opened, dust and other dirt can get into the vehicle and the wind noise is more at certain speeds.

Open/close windows

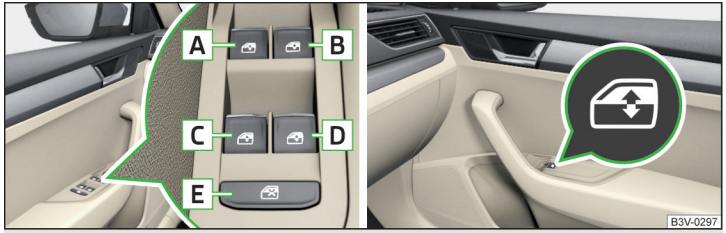

Fig. 40 **Buttons for window lifter**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 59 first.

All windows can be operated from the driver's seat. The window in the front passenger door and the windows in the rear doors are operated via the button in each door.

Power window buttons » Fig. 40

A Front door left
B Front door right
C Rear door, left

D Rear door, right
E Deactivate/activate the buttons in the rear doors (the deactivation may be advantageous if, for example, children are transported on the rear seats)

› To **open**, lightly press the appropriate button down and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.
› **or:** press the button to the stop, the window automatically opens fully. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop.
› To **close**, pull gently on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has moved into the desired position.
› **or:** pull the button briefly to the stop, the window automatically closes fully. Renewed pulling of the button causes the window to stop immediately.
› To **deactivate/activate** the buttons in the rear doors, press the E button. If the buttons in the rear doors are deactivated, the warning light illuminates in the E button.

Note

▪ After switching off the ignition, the windows can still open and close for about 10 minutes.
▪ After the driver or front passenger door is opened, the operation of the window is only possible with the button A» Fig. 40, in which case this is pressed or pulled for approx. 2 seconds.

Force limiter

Read and observe ! and ! on page 59 first.

The electrical power windows are fitted with a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents the window from being closed during the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time it is not possible to automatically close the window. The force limiter is still switched on.

The force limiter is only not operational if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds – **the window will now close with full force!**

If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

Window convenience operation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 59 first.

The convenience operation for the window offers the option to open/close all the windows at once (or only the window in the driver's door). Setting, activation and deactivation of the convenience operation» *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.

Opening

› Press and hold the button on the key.
› **or:** switch off the ignition, open the driver's door and hold the key A until it stops in the open position » Fig. 40 *on page 59*.

Closing

› Press and hold the button on the key.
› **or:** switch off the ignition, open the driver's door and hold the key A until it stops in the closed position » Fig. 40 *on page 59*.
› In the KESSY system, hold your finger on the sensor on the outside of the door handle of the front door » Fig. 32 *on page 52*.

The convenience operation will only function correctly if all the windows automatically open/close properly.

Convenience opening or closing the window using the key in the driver's door locking cylinder is only possible within 45 seconds of locking the vehicle.

The movement of the window is stopped immediately when the respective button is released.

Note

The settings for the window convenience operation are stored (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 46.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 59 first.

Repeatedly opening and closing the window can cause the window mechanism to overheat and become temporarily blocked. You will be able to operate the window again as soon as the operating mechanisms has cooled down.

The electric power windows are deactivated after the vehicle battery has been disconnected After connecting the vehicle battery, the system is **activated** as follows.

› Switch-on the ignition.
› Pull the top edge of the button and close the window.
› Release the button.
› Pull up the respective button and hold for 1 second.

Panorama sliding/tilting roof

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The panorama sliding/tilting roof (hereinafter referred to as sliding/tilting roof) can only be operated when the ignition is turned on and when the outdoor temperature is no lower than -20 °C.

The sliding/tilting roof can still be operated for approx. 10 minutes after switching the ignition off. After opening the driver or front passenger door, it is no longer possible to operate the sliding/tilting roof.

WARNING

When operating the sliding/tilting roof and the sunshade, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

CAUTION

- During the winter it may be necessary to remove any ice and snow in the vicinity of the sliding/tilting roof before opening it to prevent any damage to the opening mechanism.
- Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.

Operation

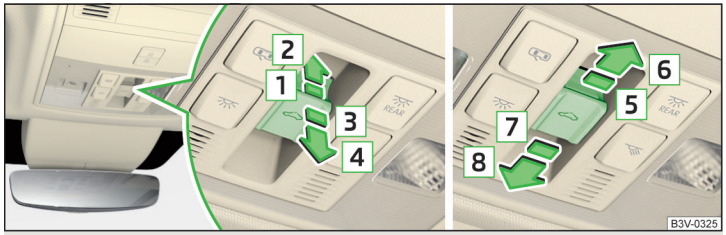

Fig. 41 **Operation of the sliding/tilting roof**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 61 first.

Operation of the sliding/tilting roof » Fig. 41

1 Gradual opening
2 Complete opening
3 Gradual closing
4 Complete closing
5 Gradual opening
6 Fully opening
After the first press, the sliding/tilting roof stops in the position where the intensity of the wind noise is low (at speeds of approx. less than 80 km/h). Press again and the sliding/tilting roof goes to the stop.
7 Gradual closing
8 Complete closing

Power limit

Read and observe ! and ! on page 61 first.

The sliding/tilting roof is fitted with a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres.

WARNING

If the sliding/tilting roof is closed by holding down the switch 7 / 8, » Fig. 41 *on page 61*and the closing process is hindered by an obstacle, then when attempting to close for a third time, the force limiter is rendered inoperable (if the period of 5 s is not reached between the individual attempts to close). The sliding/tilting roof closes with full force - it may cause injury.

Activate operation of the sliding/tilting roof

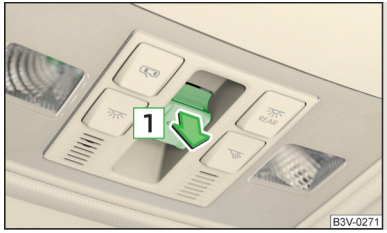

Fig. 42
Operation of the sliding/tilting roof

Read and observe ! and ! on page 61 first.

If the operation of the sliding/tilting roof is deactivated (e.g. after disconnecting and connecting the battery), then operation will have to be activated.

› Switch on the ignition, pull the switch on the recess all the way down in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 42 and hold.

The sliding/tilting roof opens/closes again after around 10 seconds.

› Release the lever.

Sunshade with manual operation

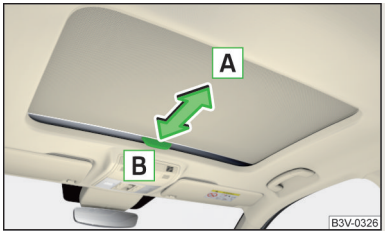

Fig. 43
Operation of the sunshade

Read and observe ! and ! on page 61 first.

› To **open**, pull the handle in direction of arrow A » Fig. 43.
› To **close**, pull the handle in direction of arrow B.

Sunshade with electric operation

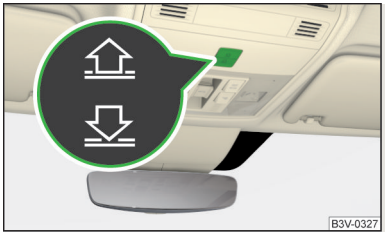

Fig. 44
Buttons for operating the sunshade

Read and observe ! and ! on page 61 first.

Operation of the sunshade » Fig. 44

- Open - by pressing (press again - sunshade stops moving)
- Close - by pressing (press again - sunshade stops moving)

The sunshade can also be operated by pressing and holding the appropriate button (starts movement of the sunshade) and releasing it when the sunshade reaches the desired position.

Activating operation of the sunshade

Read and observe ! and ! on page 61 first.

If the operation of sunshade is deactivated (e.g. after disconnecting and connecting the battery), then the operation will have to be activated.

› Switch on the ignition, press and hold the » Fig. 44 *on page 62* button.

The sunshade opens and closes again after around 10 seconds.

› Release the button.

Lights and visibility

Lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unless otherwise stated, the lights only work when the ignition is switched on.

! WARNING

The automatic driving lamp control **AUTO** only operates as a support and does not release the driver from his responsibility to check the lights and, if necessary, to switch on the light depending on the prevailing light conditions.

i Note

The headlights may mist up temporarily. When the light is switched on, the light-emitting surface demists after a short period of time.

Operating the lights

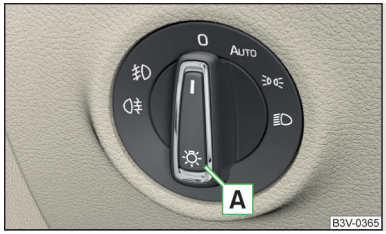

Fig. 45
Light switch

Read and observe ! on page 63 first.

To **switch on/off** the lights, turn the A » Fig. 45 switch to one of the following positions (equipment-dependent).

0 Switching off lights (except daytime running lights)

AUTO Switching lights on/off automatically » page 65

Switching on the parking lights or parking lights on both sides » page 67

Switching on the low beam

Headlight range control of the Halogen headlights

› Press the CAR button on the Infotainment and then press the function keys in the display one after the other ⚙ Tap on → **Light** → **headlight range control** (if applicable **Light Assist** - depending on Infotainment type).

Depending on the load of the vehicle, the headlight beam of the Halogen headlights can be set to the following basic settings.

0 Front seats occupied, boot empty

2 All seats occupied, boot empty

4 All seats occupied, boot loaded

6 Driver seat occupied, boot loaded

Depending on the load of the vehicle, the positions **1**. **3**. **5** can also be set.

The **Xenon headlights** feature no manual headlight range control. After switching on the ignition, adjust these **automatically** to the load and driving condition of the vehicle.

! WARNING

Always adjust the headlight range control to comply with the following conditions and prevent accidents.

- The vehicle does not dazzle other road users, especially oncoming vehicles.
- The beam range is sufficient for safe driving.

i Note

- If, with a dipped beam, the ignition is turned off, then the dipped beam will automatically switch off [1] and the parking lights illuminate. The parking lights are switched off when the ignition key is removed (for vehicles with the KESSY system, after opening the driver's door).
- If there is a fault in the light switch, the low beam comes on automatically.

Daylight running lights (DAY LIGHT)

Read and observe ! on page 63 first.

The daytime running lights illuminate the area in front of and to the rear of the vehicle (only applicable for some countries).

The lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

✓ The light switch is in the position **0** or **AUTO**.

✓ The ignition is switched on.

! WARNING

Always switch on the low beam when visibility is poor.

i Note

The light can operate automatically under certain circumstances, even if the light switch is in position .

[1] Does not apply to the position **AUTO**, as long as the conditions are met for the COMING HOME function » page 67.

Turn signal and main beam

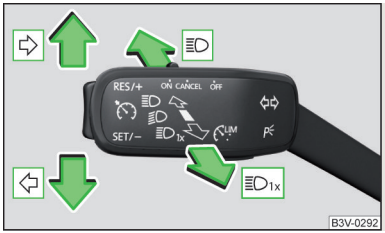

Fig. 46
Operating lever: Turn signal and main beam operation

Read and observe ! on page 63 first.

Control stalk positions » Fig. 46

⇨ Switch on the right turn signal

⇦ Switch on the left turn signal

≡D Switch on main beam (spring-tensioned position)

≡D x1 Switch off main beam / headlight flasher on (spring-tensioned position)

The **main beam** can only be switched on when the low beam lights are on.

The **headlight flasher** can be operated even if the ignition is switched off.

The **turn signal** switches off automatically depending on the steering angle after turning.

Use the control stalk to switch on/off the **headlight assistant**» page 68.

Convenience turn signal
When the control talk is pressed slightly up or down, the respective turn signal indicates three times.

If, during the convenience turn signal, the control stalk is pressed in the opposite direction, the indicating will stop.

The convenience turn signal can be activated/deactivated » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.

! WARNING

Only turn on the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users will not be dazzled.

i Note

The setting (activation/deactivation) of the convenience turn signal is stored (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 46.

Automatic driving light control

Fig. 47
Light switch: AUTO position

Read and observe ! on page 63 first.

The light switch is in position **AUTO**» Fig. 47 then depending on the equipment the automatic switch on / off the lights corresponding to the light or weather conditions (rain) takes place.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the lettering **AUTO** illuminates next to the light switch. If the light is switched on automatically, the symbol also illuminates next to the light switch.

Automatic driving light control in the rain (referred to as function in the following)
The dipped beam is switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

✓ The function is activated.

✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO**.

✓ The windscreen wipers are on for more than 30 s.

The light turns off automatically about 4 minutes after turning off the wipers.

Setting, activation/deactivation
The following functions can be set or activated/deactivated in Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual*.

- Sensitivity adjustment of the sensor for determining the lighting conditions for automatic driving light control
- Automatic driving light control during rain

CAUTION

Poorer visibility is evaluated by a sensor mounted below the windscreen in the holder of the rear-view mirror. Do not attach any stickers or similar objects in front of the sensor on the windscreen to avoid impairing the function of the system.

Note

The setting (activate/deactivate) of the automatic driving light control during rain is stored (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 46.

Xenon headlight

Read and observe ! on page 63 first.

The Xenon headlights (hereinafter referred to as just system) use the driving data to automatically ensure the for the best possible light cone in front of the vehicle. The system also changes the lighting direction of the headlights to illuminate the road in the curve.

The system works as long as the light switch is in position **AUTO**.

The system will automatically operate in the following modes: urban, extra-urban, motorway, rain, fog.

WARNING

If there is a system malfunction the headlights are automatically lowered to the emergency position, which prevents a possible dazzling of oncoming traffic. This reduces the cone of light in front of the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Fog lights/rear fog lights

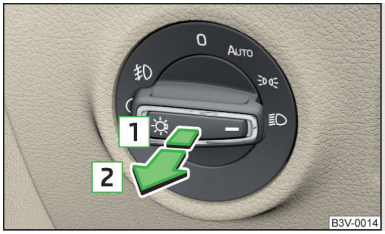

Fig. 48
Light switch – switch on front and rear fog lights

Read and observe ! on page 63 first.

Switching on the fog lights/rear fog lights is possible under the following conditions.

✓ The lights switch is in position **AUTO**, or » Fig. 48.

› To **switch on** the **fog lights**, turn the light switch to position 1; the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.
› To **switch on** the **rear fog lights**, pull the light switch to position 2; the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

If the vehicle is not equipped with **fog lights**, the **rear fog lights** can be switched on by pulling the light switch to the only possible setting.

Switch off the fog lights/rear fog lights in reverse order.

Note

While driving with an accessory connected to the trailer socket (e.g. trailer, bike carrier) only the equipment is illuminated by the fog light. The towing device must be installed at the factory or from the ŠKODA original accessories.

Fog lights with the CORNER function

Read and observe ! on page 63 first.

The CORNER function automatically switches on the fog lights on the respective side of the vehicle (e.g. when cornering), if the following conditions are fulfilled.

- ✓ The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are turned sharply [1].
- ✓ The vehicle speed is below 40 km/h.
- ✓ The low beam is switched on.
- ✓ The fog lights are not switched on.

The two fog lights are switched on when you shift into the reverse gear.

COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME

Read and observe ! on page 63 first.

The function COMING HOME ensures that the vehicle's environment is illuminated after switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door.

The function LEAVING HOME ensures that the vehicle's environment is illuminated after unlocking the vehicle with the radio remote control unit.

The function switches the light on only if there is poorer visibility and the light switch is in the position **AUTO**.

The two functions can be **activated/deactivated and set** in Infotainment *» Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.

! CAUTION

- Poorer visibility is evaluated by a sensor mounted below the windscreen in the holder of the rear-view mirror. Do not attach any stickers or similar objects in front of the sensor on the windscreen to avoid impairing the function of the system.
- If this option is always enabled, then the battery is heavily loaded.

i Note

The setting of the two functions is stored (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 46.

[1] If the two switch-on variants are conflicting (e.g. if the front wheels are turned to the left and the right turn signal light is switched on), the turn signal light has the higher priority.

Hazard warning light system

Fig. 49
Button for hazard warning light system

Read and observe ! on page 63 first.

› To **switch on/off**, press the ⚠ button» Fig. 49.

When switching on, all the turn signal lights as well as the warning light ⚠ in the button flash simultaneously with the control lights ⬅ ➡ in the instrument cluster.

The hazard warning light system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

If one of the airbags is deployed, the hazard warning light system will switch on automatically.

The automatic activation of hazard warning lights can take place during a heavy braking. After starting or accelerating the hazard warning system is automatically switched off.

When the hazard warning system is on and the indicator light is switched on (e.g. when turning), the hazard warning lights are switched off temporarily and only the turn signal flashes on the relevant side of the vehicle.

Parking lights

Read and observe ! on page 63 first.

The side light is provided for lighting of the parked vehicle.

Switching on the side light P≤ on one side

› Switch off the ignition.

› Push the control stalk all the way up or down » Fig. 46 *on page 65* to the stop.

The parking lights on the respective side of the vehicle are turned on.

Switching on the side light on both sides
› Switch on the ignition and turn the light switch to position » page 64, the parking lights are turned on.
› Switch off the ignition and lock the car.

After removing the ignition key and opening the driver's door, an audible warning sounds. After a few seconds, or after closing the driver's door, the acoustic warning signal stops.

CAUTION
- Turning on the parking light means the battery is heavily loaded.
- The parking lights may switch off automatically due to a low battery charge.

If the two-sided parking lights are switched on when the ignition is off, the parking lights will not switch on automatically.

Entry space lighting

Read and observe ! on page 63 first.

The lighting is positioned on the lower edge of the exterior mirror and illuminates the entry area of the front door.

The lighting **switches on** after unlocking or opening the vehicle door (depending on the lighting conditions).

The lighting **switches off** after around 30 seconds after closing the front door or switching on the ignition.

Driving abroad

Read and observe ! on page 63 first.

When driving in countries with opposing traffic system (traffic on the left/right), your headlights may dazzle oncoming traffic. Therefore, it is necessary to have a specialist garage adjust the headlights.

You can adjust the Xenon headlights yourself by switching on the **travel mode** in Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*. In this mode, no automatic beam adjustment is made ahead of the vehicle.

Headlamp Assistant (Light Assist / Dynamic Light Assist)

Introduction

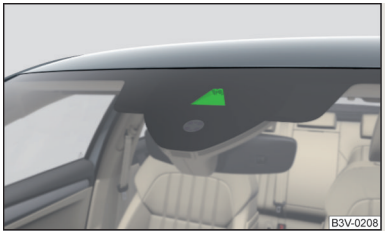

Fig. 50
Sensor window for the headlight assistant

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The headlight assistant (referred to as just system in the following) automatically switches the main beam on/off, if necessary, adjusts the beam of the front headlights in accordance with the existing traffic situation (other vehicles) and environmental conditions (e.g. driving through a lit village).

The switching on/off of the main beam, if necessary, the adaptation of the headlight, is controlled by a sensor » Fig. 50.

Depending on the equipment, the following system versions can exist.

Light Assist automatically switches the main beam on/off.

Dynamic Light Assist automatically adjusts the light cone shape of the front headlights in order to prevent dazzling the oncoming and preceding vehicles, while ensuring the highest possible illumination of the road edges.

If the driving mode **Eco** » page 155, *Selection of the driving mode (Driving Mode Selection)* or **travel mode** » page 68, *Driving abroad* is selected, the automatic adjustment of the beam is deactivated, **Dynamic Light Assist** only switches the main beam on/off automatically.

If the Xenon headlights are in the mode **rain** or **fog** » page 66, then **Dynamic Light Assist** is deactivated.

If there is a **fault**, the error message will appear in the instrument cluster display. Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

The system is used only for support, thus the driver is not released from his obligation to manually adjust the main or low beam according to the given ambient conditions (e.g. in unfavourable lighting and weather conditions, as when passing poorly lit road users, if necessary, when the visual range of the sensor is limited by an obstacle).

CAUTION

Do not attach any stickers or similar objects in front of the sensor on the windscreen to avoid impairing the function of the system.

Note

The adjustment of the headlight assistant in Infotainment is stored (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 46.

Operating conditions

Read and observe and on page 69 first.

The system works under the following conditions.

- ✓ The system is activated in Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.
- ✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO**.
- ✓ The system is activated » page 69, *Switching on and off*.
- ✓ The vehicle speed is over 60 km/h or for some countries more than 40 km/h.
- ✓ The windscreen is clean in the sensor area.

Switching on and off

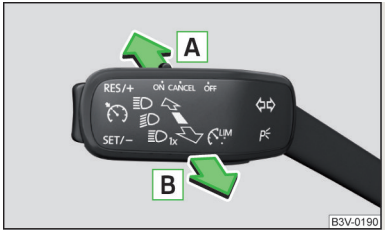

Fig. 51
Operating lever: Headlamp assistant

Read and observe and on page 69 first.

- › To **turn on** the system, push the control stalk into the sprung position A » Fig. 51, the warning light illuminates in the display of the instrument cluster
- › To **turn off** the automatically switched on main beam, push the control stalk into the sprung position B, the » Fig. 51warning light expires.
- › To **manually switch on** the main beam, push the control stalk into the sprung position A » Fig. 51, the warning light expires.

The headlight switches off automatically when the speed falls below 30 km/h.

Interior lighting

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The inner lighting also works if the ignition is switched off. With the ignition switched off, the lights will automatically switch off after approximately after 10 minutes.

Operation of the lights of the front seats

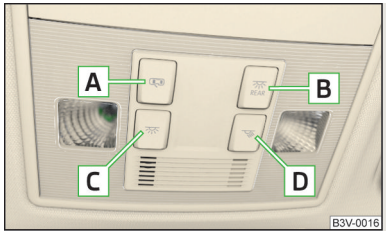

Fig. 52
Operation of the lights from the front seats

Switch on/off (by pressing the relevant switch) » Fig. 52

A Automatic operation
B REAR Rear lighting

C Front and rear lighting
D Front passenger lighting

Automatic operation - switch
The system is **turned on** when any of the following is present.
- The vehicle is unlocked.
- One of the doors is opened.
- The ignition key is removed.

The system is **turned off** when any of the following is present.
- The vehicle is locked.
- The ignition is switched on.
- About 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed.

Interior lighting, rear

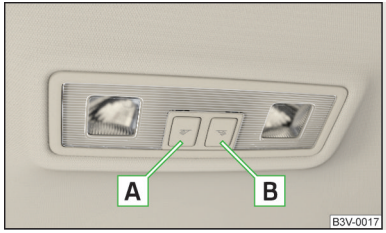

Fig. 53
Interior lighting, rear: variant 1

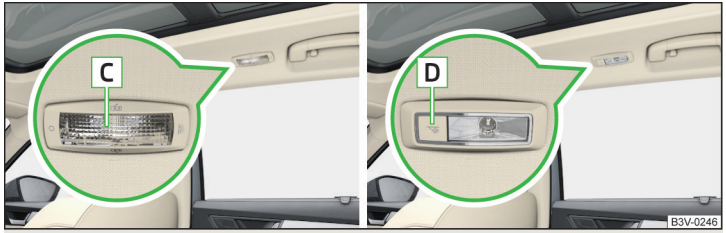

Fig. 54 **Interior lighting, rear: variant 2/3**

Option 1 - switch on/off (by pressing relevant switch) » Fig. 53
A Reading light left
B Reading light right

Variant 2 - operation (by moving the light lens C) » Fig. 54
Switching on
0 Switching off
Automatic operation[1)]

Option 3 - switch on/off (by pressing relevant switch) » Fig. 54
D Reading light left
Reading light right

The rear lighting (variants 1 and 3) is controlled together with the automatic operation of the lighting from the front seats.
- When the front interior lighting is **switched on**, the rear interior lighting also turns on automatically.
- When the front interior lighting is **switched off**, the rear interior lighting can be turned on/off as required.

Ambient lighting

The ambient lighting illuminates the panel, side door panels and the footwell.

The **switching on** of the lighting takes place automatically after opening the door, **switching off** occurs automatically after the locking of the vehicle or 30 seconds after the closing of the door.

The brightness (and in certain cases the colour) of the lighting can be adjusted in the Infotainment system » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.

Note
The setting of the ambient lighting is stored in the active user account personalisation » page 46.

[1)] In this position, for the rear lighting, the same conditions apply as for the automatic operation of the lighting from the front seats» page 69.

Visibility

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

No objects should be attached to the sun visors, which could limit the view or endanger the vehicle occupants during sudden braking or should the vehicle collide.

Windscreen and rear window heating

Fig. 55 **Buttons for the front and rear window heater: Climatronic / manual air conditioning**

Read and observe ! on page 71 first.

The heating for quick defrosting and ventilation of the front /and rear window.

The heating only works when the engine is running.

Buttons for the heating (depending on vehicle equipment) » Fig. 55

- Switch on/off the rear window heating
- Switching the windscreen heater on/off

When the heating is switched on, a light illuminates inside or below the button.

The heating automatically switches off after ten minutes.

If the engine is switched off when the heating is on and turned back on again within 10 minutes, the heating is continued.

Note

- If the on-board voltage decreases, the heating switches off automatically » page 188, *Automatic consumer shut-off - discharge protection of the vehicle battery*.
- If the lighting inside or below the button flashes, the heater will not work because of the low charge of the battery.
- If the Climatronic recognises that the windshield could fog up, the windshield heating is automatically switched on. This function can be activated/deactivated in Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.

Front sun visors

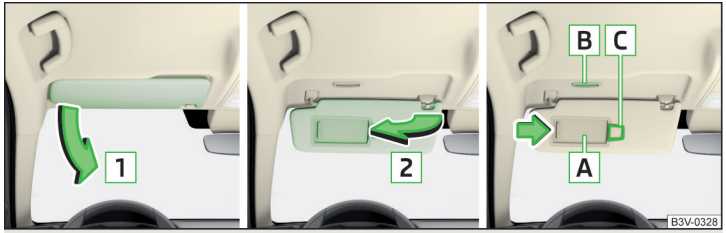

Fig. 56 **Fold down flap / flip up flap / make-up mirror and parking permit holder**

Read and observe ! on page 71 first.

Operation and description of the sun visor » Fig. 56

- 1 Swivel the visor towards the windscreen
- 2 Swivel cover towards the door
- A Make-up mirror with cover (the cover can be pushed in the direction of the arrow)
- B Light (turns on when the cover of the make-up mirror is pushed to one side)
- C Parking ticket holder

Sunshade

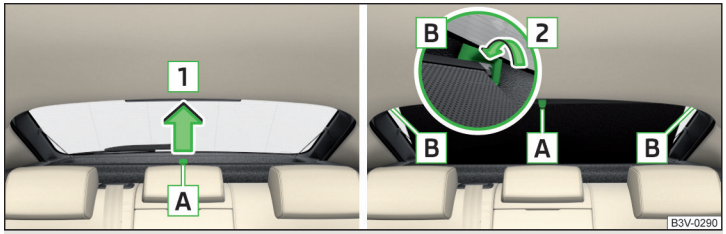

Fig. 57 **Sun screen**

Read and observe ! on page 71 first.

The sun screen is located in a housing on the luggage compartment cover.

› To **roll down**, pull the sunshade by the handle A in direction of arrow 1 and suspend in the magnetic holder B in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 57.
› To **roll up**, pull the sunshade by the handle A out of the holder B against the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 57. Hold the sunshade so that this can slowly roll back in without damaging.

Note

It is not necessary to roll up the sunshade before opening the boot lid.

Sunshade in the rear doors

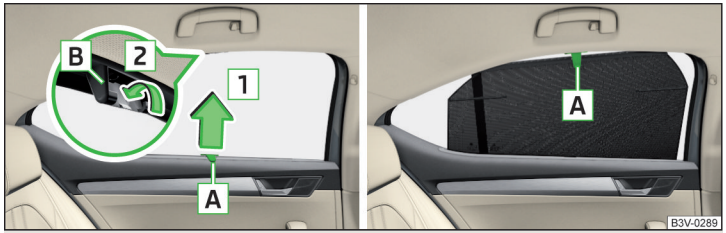

Fig. 58 **Sun blind on the rear door**

Read and observe ! on page 71 first.

› To **roll down**, pull out the sunshade by the handle A in direction of arrow 1 and suspend in the holder B on top edge of the door in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 58.
› To **roll up**, hold the sunshade by the handle A and remove it from the holder B against the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 58. Hold the sunshade so that this can slowly roll back in without damaging.

Windscreen wipers and washers

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The windscreen wipers and the wash system only operate if the ignition is switched on and the bonnet and boot are closed.

! WARNING

Do not use the windscreen washer system at low temperatures, without heating the windscreen beforehand. The window washer fluid could otherwise freeze on the windscreen and restrict the view to the front.

! CAUTION

- If the windscreen wipers are in rest position, they cannot be folded out from the windscreen. To fold down the windscreen wiper from the screen you must switch the wipers to the service position» page 209.
- In cold temperatures and during the winter, check before switching on the ignition that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the windscreen wipers are switched on when the blades are frozen to the windscreen, this may damage both the blades and windscreen wiper motor!
- Carefully release the frozen-on windscreen wiper blades from the windscreen and remove snow and ice.
- Handle the windscreen wipers with care - there is the risk of damaging the windscreen with the windscreen wiper arms.

▪ Do not switch on the ignition when the front windscreen wiper arms are folded down - there is the danger of damaging the bonnet by the windscreen wiper arms.
▪ If there is an obstacle on the windscreen, the wipers will try to push away the obstacle five times. Thereafter, the wipers will stop to prevent them becoming damaged. Turn on the wipers again only after the obstacle has been removed.

Note

▪ Each time the ignition switches off for the third time, the position of the windscreen wipers changes. This counteracts an early fatigue of the wiper rubbers.
▪ The windscreen washer nozzles for the windscreen are heated when the engine is running and the outside temperature is less than +10 °C.

Windscreen wipers and washers

Fig. 59
Operating the windscreen wipers and washing system at the front

Read and observe ! and ! on page 72 first.

The lever can be moved into the following positions » Fig. 59

OFF Wiping and washing switched off

INT Depending on equipment fitted:
- ► Intermittent wipe of the windscreen
- ► Automatic windscreen wiping in the rain

A ..ıı Setting of windscreen wiper interval for the position **INT** - by setting the switch in the direction of the arrow, the windscreen wipers will wipe more often

LOW Slow disk wiping

HIGH Fast disk wiping

1x Single windscreen wipe (sprung position)

Spraying and wiping the windscreen (sprung position)
After releasing the operating lever, the wipers will make from 2 to 3 wiper strokes.

At a speed of more than 2 km/h, the wiper wipes once again 5 seconds after the last wiper stroke in order to wipe the last drops from the windscreen. This function can be activated/deactivated by a specialist garage.

Automatic windscreen wiping in the rain In Infotainment, can be **activated/deactivated** » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.

WARNING

Automatic wiping during rain is only a support. The driver is not released from the responsibility to set the function of the windscreen wipers manually depending on the visibility conditions.

Note

▪ If the wiping is carried out without interruption, the wiping speed varies depending on the vehicle speed.
▪ The setting (activation/deactivation) of the automatic windscreen wiping in the rain is stored (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 46.

Rear windscreen wipers and washers/ reversing camera cleaning system

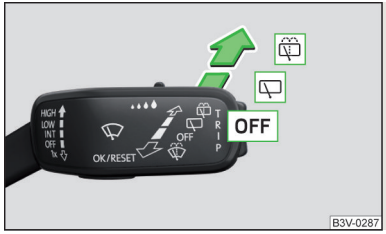

Fig. 60
Operating the windscreen wipers and washing system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 72 first.

The lever can be moved into the following positions » Fig. 60

OFF Wiping and washing switched off

Windscreen wiping

Spraying and wiping the windscreen (sprung position) - after releasing the control stalk, the wipers perform another 2 to 3 wiper strokes
Spraying the rear view camera (sprung position)

Automatic rear wiper
If the windscreen wiping is performed without interruption, then the automatic regular intermittent wiping of the rear window takes place.

This function can be activated/deactivated in Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.

Note

▪ The rear window is wiped once automatically if the windscreen wipers are on when reverse gear is selected.
▪ The setting (activation/deactivation) of the automatic rear window wiping in the rain is stored (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 46.

Headlight cleaning system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 72 first.

The headlights are cleaned with every first and after every tenth spraying of the windscreen under the following conditions.

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The low beam is switched on.
✓ The outside temperature is about -12° C to +39° C.

To ensure the correct functioning of the system, even in winter, this needs to be regularly cleared of snow and ice (e.g. using the de-icing spray).

Rear-view mirror

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

Exterior mirrors increase the field of view, however, make objects appear smaller and further away. Therefore, use the rear-view mirror to determine the distances to the following vehicles.

WARNING

▪ The mirrors with automatic dimming contain electrolyte fluid which may leak if the mirror glass is broken - this can irritate skin, eyes and the respiratory system.
▪ If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolyte fluid, immediately wash the affected area for a few minutes with plenty of water. Seek medical assistance if required.

Rear-view mirror dimming

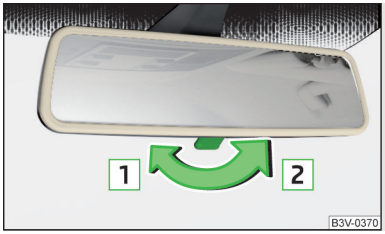

Fig. 61
Rear-view mirrors with manual dimming

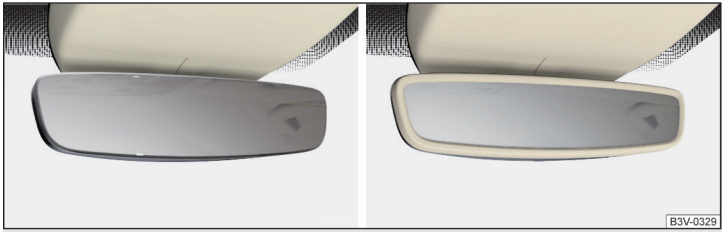

Fig. 62 **Rear-view mirrors with automatic dimming: variant 1/2**

Read and observe ! on page 74 first.

Mirrors with manual dimming » Fig. 61

1 Basic position of the mirror (not dimmed)
2 Mirror blackout

Mirror with automatic dimming
The mirror dimming » Fig. 62 is automatically controlled after the engine start.

When the interior lights are switched on or the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror moves back into the basic position (not dimmed).

! WARNING

- Attach external devices (e.g. navigation system) not in the vicinity of the **mirror with automatic dimming**. The illuminated display of an external device can affect the function of the rear-view mirror - it could cause an accident.
- The automatic dimming mirror only functions smoothly if the light falling on the sensors is not compromised (e.g. by the sunshade at the back). The sensors are located on the front and back of the mirror.

Exterior mirrors

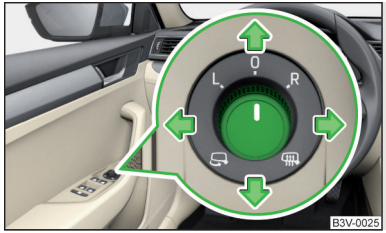

Fig. 63
Exterior mirror operation

Read and observe ! on page 74 first.

The exterior mirrors can (depending on vehicle equipment) have a manual or electric fold-in function, automatic dimming and memory function.

The rotary knob can be moved into the following positions (depending on vehicle equipment)

L Adjusting the left-hand mirror area
0 Switch off mirror control
R Adjusting the right-hand mirror area
Mirror heating (only works when the engine is running)
Folding in the mirrors electrically (to fold back, move the rotary knob to another position) » !

Setting the mirror area
› Move the rotary knob in the direction of arrows » Fig. 63.

If the mirror setting fails at any time, the mirrors can be adjusted manually by pressing on the edge of the mirror area.

Setting the mirror surfaces synchronously
This function allows the simultaneous adjustment of the two mirror areas. This function can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.

› Turn the knob for the mirror control to the position for the driver mirror adjustment.
› Adjust the mirror areas to the desired position.

Manual folding mirrors
The mirror can be manually folded towards the side windows. To put it back to its original position, it should be folded back from the side window until it audibly clicks into place.

Automatic folding in/back of both mirrors
The exterior mirrors are automatically collapsed after locking the vehicle in the park position. After unlocking the vehicle, the mirrors are folded back to the driving position » .

This function can be activated/deactivated in Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.

Mirror with automatic dimming
The exterior mirror dimming is controlled together with the automatic rear-view mirror dimming » page 75.

Memory function for mirror (vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat)
It is possible to save the current setting of the exterior mirror when saving the driver's seat position with » page 78, *Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat*or » page 78, *Memory function of the remote control key*.

Tilting the mirror area of the front passenger mirror (vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat)
The front passenger mirror area can be tilted to the stored position to improve the view to the curb when reversing.

Operating conditions.
✓ The function is activated in Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.
✓ The setting of the mirror area has been previously stored » page 78, *Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat* or. » page 78, *Memory function of the remote control key*.
✓ The reverse gear is engaged.
✓ The knob for the mirror control is in the position for the passenger mirror adjustment.

The mirror area returns to its initial position after the rotary knob is set to another position or if the speed is greater than 15 km/h.

WARNING
Do not touch the exterior mirror surfaces, if the exterior mirror heating is switched on - hazard of burning.

CAUTION
▪ Never manually fold in/out the electrically folding exterior mirrors - there is a risk of damage to the mirror!
▪ When the mirror is swung by external influences (due to impact during manoeuvring, for example), then first **fold-in** the mirror by turning the knob and wait for a loud clapping noise.

Note
▪ The setting of the mirror functions is stored in Infotainment (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 46.

Seats and head restraints

Front seats

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- Only adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- Caution when adjusting the seat! You may suffer injuries or bruises as a result of adjusting the seat without paying proper attention.

Manual adjustment

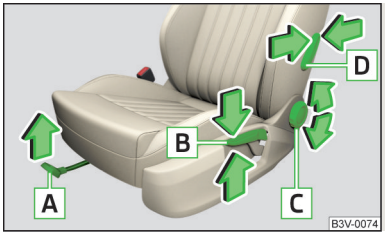

Fig. 64
Control elements on the seat

Read and observe ! on page 77 first.

The seats can be adjusted by the respective operating element being pulled, pressed or turned in the direction of the arrows » Fig. 64.

A Adjusting the seat in the longitudinal direction (after releasing the control lever must lock audibly)

B Adjusting height of seat

C Adjust the tilt of the backrest (do not lean on the backrest when adjusting)

D Setting the extent of the curvature of the lumbar support

Note

After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.

Electrical adjustment

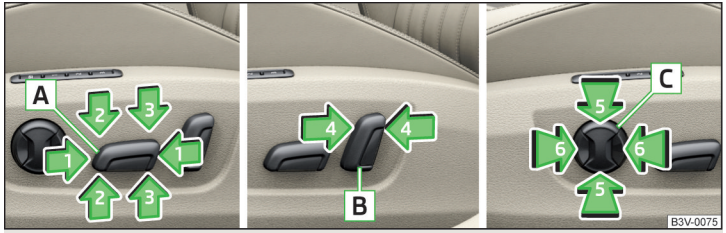

Fig. 65 **Control elements on the seat**

Read and observe ! on page 77 first.

The seats can be adjusted by the respective operating element being pressed in the direction of area of the arrow » Fig. 65.

A seat adjustment
- **1** - Move in the longitudinal direction
- **2** - Change in inclination
- **3** - Change in height

B Adjusting the seat backrest
- **4** - Change in inclination

C Adjusting lumbar support
- **5** - Change curvature
- **6** - The degree of curvature change

WARNING

The electric front seat adjustment is functional even with the ignition off. Therefore, when leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle - there is a danger of injury!

Note

▪ If the inclination angle of the seat backrest relative to the seat surface is greater than 102 °, then it is not possible for safety reasons to save this setting in the memory of the electrically adjustable seats or the remote control key.
▪ On vehicles with personalisation, the driver's seat setting is stored in the active user account personalisation » page 46.

Convenience operation of the front passenger seat

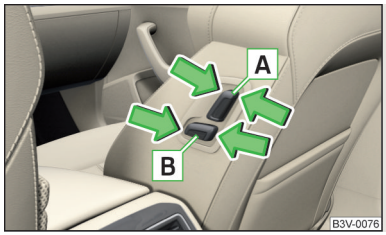

Fig. 66
Operating elements on the front passenger's seat

Read and observe ! on page 77 first.

The front passenger seat can also be operated from the rear seats, by pressing the respective operating element in the direction of the arrows » Fig. 66.

A Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest
B Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction

Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat

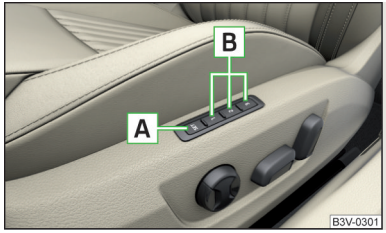

Fig. 67
SET button and memory buttons

Read and observe ! on page 77 first.

Among the memory buttons B on the driver's seat, a setting for the driver´s seat and exterior mirror position can be saved » Fig. 67.

Storing driver's seat and exterior mirror settings for the forwards drive

› Switch on the ignition, adjust the seat and the exterior mirrors.
› Hold down the SET A » Fig. 67 button and within 10 seconds press the desired memory button B at the same time. Storing is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

Storing front passenger´s exterior mirror settings for reversing

The function of lowering the front passenger mirror area when reversing must be enabled in Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.

› Turn on the ignition and press the desired memory button B » Fig. 67.
› Turn the rotary knob for the exterior mirror control to the position for the front passenger mirror area » page 75.
› Engage reverse gear.
› Adjust the front passenger's mirror to the desired position.
› Disengage reverse gear. The set position of the exterior mirror is stored.

Retrieving the saved setting

› With the ignition off and open driver's door, **press** the desired memory button B.
› In other cases (e.g. if the ignition is switched on or the driver's door closed), **hold** the button.

Stopping the ongoing adjustment

› Press any button on the driver's seat or the button on the remote control key.

Note

Every time you save new seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forwards, you must also save the front passenger mirror setting for reversing again.

Memory function of the remote control key

Applies to vehicles that do not have the personalisation function.

Read and observe ! on page 77 first.

Every time the vehicle is locked, the driver´s seat and exterior mirror settings are saved and assigned to the key with which the vehicle was locked.

After the following unlocking of the vehicle with the same key, the driver´s seat and exterior mirrors that are saved to this key will be adopted.

This function can be **activated/deactivated** in Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.

Storing front passenger´s exterior mirror settings for reversing
The function of lowering the front passenger mirror area when reversing must be enabled in Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.

› Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key and switch on the ignition.
› Turn the rotary knob for the exterior mirror control to the position for the front passenger mirror area » page 75.
› Engage reverse gear.
› Adjust the front passenger's mirror to the desired position.
› Disengage reverse gear. The adjusted position of the exterior mirror is stored in the remote control key memory.

Stopping the ongoing adjustment
› Press any button on the driver's seat or the button on the remote control key.

Folding front passenger seat

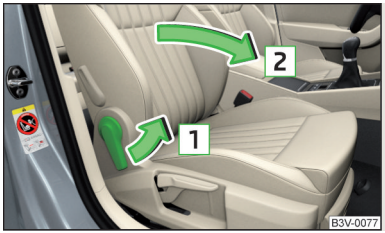

Fig. 68
Folding the front passenger seat forward

Read and observe ! on page 77 first.

The front passenger seat can be folded forward into a horizontal position depending on the vehicle equipment.

› To **fold down**, pull the lever in direction of arrow 1, fold the seat backrest in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 68. The locking mechanism must audibly snap into place.
› To **fold up**, pull the lever in direction of arrow 1, fold back the seat backrest against the direction of arrow 2. The locking mechanism must audibly snap into place.
› Check this by pulling on the seat backrest.

! WARNING
- If the seat backrest is folded down, only the seat behind the driver´s seat can be used to transport passengers.
- The front passenger airbag should be switched off when transporting objects on the seat which was folded forwards » page 20.
- Do not adjust the seat backrest while driving - it can cause injury and accidents!
- When moving the seat backrest, keep limbs out of the area between the seat and seat backrest – risk of injury!
- Never transport the following items on the seat backrest when folded forwards.
  - Objects that could restrict the driver's view.
  - Objects which make it impossible for the driver to control the vehicle, e.g. if they roll under the pedals, or could protrude into the driver's zone.
  - Objects which could lead to injury to passengers due to a change of direction or braking manoeuvre when accelerating sharply.

Setting the armrest height

Fig. 69
Raise armrest

Read and observe ! on page 77 first.

› To **adjust the height**, lift the armrest in the direction of the arrow into one of the six locking positions » Fig. 69.
› To **fold down**, lift the armrest in the direction of the arrow up to the stop and then fold back down again.

Rear seats

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Seat backrests

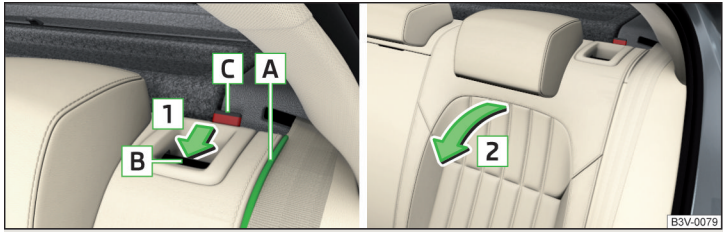

Fig. 70 **Folding down the seat backrests from the forward from the passenger compartment**

Fig. 71
Fold the backrest forward from the luggage compartment

Before folding the seat backrests forwards, adapt the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged by the folded seat backrests. If necessary, remove the rear headrests » page 81.

Folding forwards from the passenger compartment

› Place the outer seat belt behind the raised edge A » Fig. 70.
› Push the release lever B in the direction of arrow 1 and fold down the seat backrest in the direction of arrow 2.

Fold forward from the luggage compartment

On vehicles with a net partition, the left and then the right and middle rear seat backrest must first be unlocked. The net partition must be rolled up in the housing.

› Pull the corresponding lever in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 71. The respective seat backrest is unlocked or folded forward.

Folding backwards

› Place the outer seat belt behind the raised edge A » Fig. 70.
› Lift the seat backrest against the direction of arrow 2 until the release lever B audibly locks. Check this by pulling on the seat backrest.
› Make sure that the red pin C is hidden.

WARNING

- The seat backrests in the occupied rear seats must be properly engaged.
- When transporting objects in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the backrest forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats.
- The seat backrests must be securely latched in position so that no objects from the luggage compartment can slip into the passenger compartment under sudden braking – risk of injury.

CAUTION

When operating the seat backrests, the seat belts must not be pinched - there is a risk of damage to the seat belts.

Fold down armrest

Fig. 72
Fold down armrest

The armrest can be **folded down** in the direction of the arrow» Fig. 72.

Headrests

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Note

In sports seats, the headrests are integrated into the seat backrests and cannot be adjusted in height.

Setting the height of the front headrests

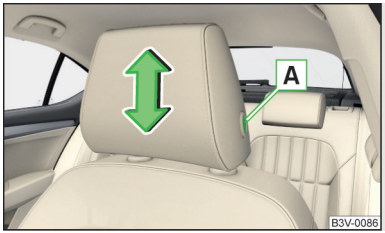

Fig. 73
Setting the height of the front headrest

› To **adjust the height**, hold the locking button A and move the rest in the desired direction » Fig. 73.

Setting the height of the rear headrests

Fig. 74 **Setting the height of the rear headrest**

› Hold the rest and **move upwards** in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 74.
› To move the restraint **down**, hold the locking button A in the direction of arrow 2 and push the rest in the direction of arrow 3.

Removing/inserting the rear headrests

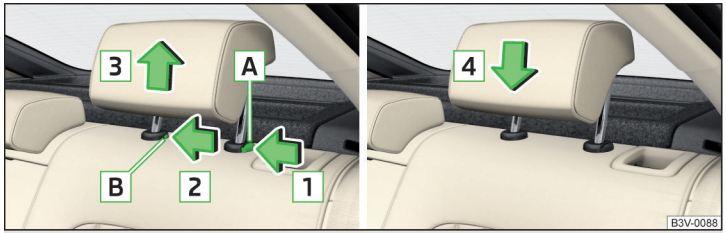

Fig. 75 **Removing/inserting the rear headrest**

› To **remove**, pull the rest out of the seat backrest up to the stop.
› Hold the locking button A in the direction of arrow 1, at the same time using a flat screwdriver with a max. width of 5 mm to press the locking button in the opening B in the direction of arrow 2 and pull out the rest in the direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 75.
› To **insert**, push the rest into the seat backrest in the direction of arrow 4 until the locking button clicks into place.

Seat heating and ventilation

Introduction

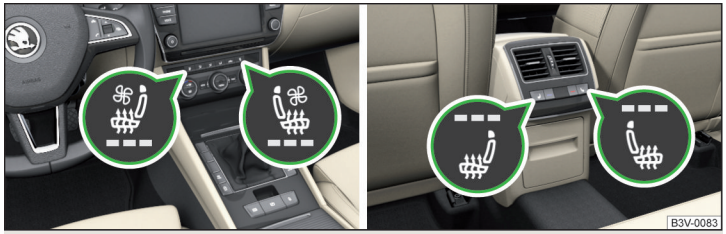

Fig. 76 **Button arrangement: Heated front seats (and ventilation) / heated rear seats**

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Depending on the equipment, the **front seats** can be heated or heated and ventilated. The **outer rear seats** can only be heated.

Buttons for the seat heating and ventilation » Fig. 76

- Left seat heating
- Right seat heating
- Seat heating and ventilation left
- Seat heating and ventilation right

The seat heating / ventilation only works when the engine is running.

When the ignition is switched off, the seat heating / ventilation is also switched off. if the engine is started again within 10 minutes, then the driver's seat heating / ventilation is switched on again automatically according to the setting before switching off the ignition.

WARNING

If you have a limited pain and / or temperature sensitivity, e.g. due to medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend that you do not use the seat heating. If the seat heating is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can evaluate your specific condition.

CAUTION

The following instructions must be observed to avoid damage to the seats.

- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.
- Do not heat seats that do not contain occupants.
- Do not heat seats in which objects are secured or resting (e.g. children´s seat, a bag etc.).
- Do not heat seats on which additional slipcovers or protective covers are fitted.

Note

If the on-board voltage decreases, the seat heating and ventilation switches off automatically » page 188, *Automatic consumer shut-off - discharge protection of the vehicle battery*.

Front and rear seats with seat heating

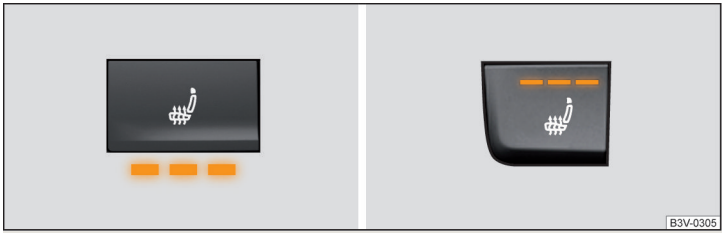

Fig. 77 **Seat heating with maximum heat turned on: front seat / rear seat**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 82 first.

› To **turn on** the heating with maximum heat » Fig. 77, press the key or button.

With repeated pressing of the button, the level is down-regulated until it **switches off** . The level of the seat heating is indicated by the number of illuminated warning lights underneath / in the button.

The adjustment of the heating for the **rear seat heating** can be carried out in Infotainment using the function surface **REAR locked/unlocked** » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*. In the locked setting the heating power can only be adjusted down to turn off.

Front seats with seat heating and ventilation

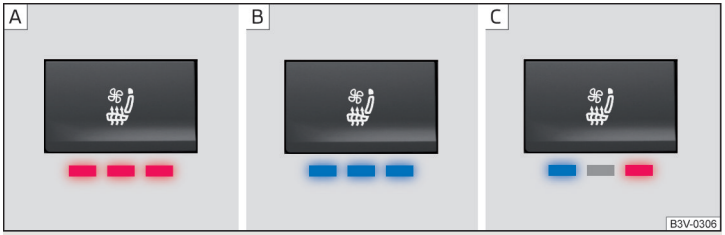

Fig. 78 **Display of the front seat heating (and ventilation) with warning lights**

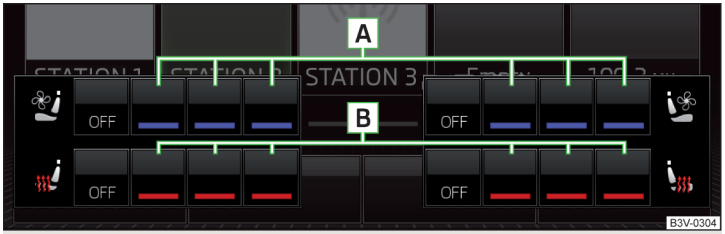

Fig. 79 **Infotainment display: Front seat heating and ventilation with maximum heating / ventilation level switched on**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 82 first.

The heating / ventilation level is indicated by the number of illuminated function surfaces in Infotainment.

Seat heating operation only

› Press the or button on the air conditioning operating device. If the seat heating was switched on before the ignition was switched off, then the seat heating will **switch on** with maximum output» Fig. 78 A.

Repeatedly pressing the or button on the air conditioning operating device will turn down the heating output until it **switches off**.

The heat output can be set in the Infotainment.

Only use seat ventilation

› Press the or button on the air conditioning operating device. If the seat ventilation was switched on before the ignition was switched off, then the seat ventilation will **switch on** with maximum output » Fig. 78 B.

Repeatedly pressing the or button on the air conditioning operating device will turn down the ventilation output until it **switches off**.

The ventilation output can be set in Infotainment.

Operating the seat heating and ventilation simultaneously

› Press the or button on the air conditioning operating device. If the seat heating and ventilation were switched on before the ignition was switched off, then proceed as follows.

› In Infotainment, adjust the heating / ventilation output using the function surfaces A and B» Fig. 79. The warning lights illuminate on the air conditioning operating device» Fig. 78 C.

The simultaneous adjustment of the heating / ventilation output with the or button on the air conditioning operating device is **not possible**.

i Note

In Infotainment, the seat heating or ventilation can be switched off via the respective function surface **OFF**» Fig. 79.

Practical features

Interior equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dashboard. These objects might slide or fall down when driving and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic – risk of accident!
- Make sure that while driving no objects can enter the driver's footwell - cause an accident!
- Do not carry any objects on the front passenger seat except objects designed for this purpose (e.g. child seats) – risk of accident!

WARNING (Continued)

- No objects should be placed in the storage compartments nor in the drinks holders; the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.
- For safety reasons, lockable storage compartments must be closed while driving - there is a risk of injury from the opened cover or from the items in the compartment.
- Make sure that no objects protrude from the compartments - there is danger of injury!
- Do not exceed the permissible load for the storage compartments and pockets - it may cause injury or there is the risk of damaging the compartments and pockets!
- Ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like may only be placed in the ashtray - risk of fire!
- The storage compartments and the waste containers are not a substitute for the ashtray and must also not be used for such purposes – risk of fire!

CAUTION

No not place large or sharp objects in the storage compartments and pockets - there is a risk of damage to the compartments and pockets.

Parking ticket holder

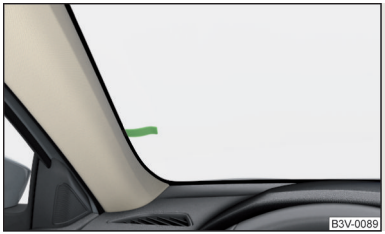

Fig. 80
Parking ticket holder

Read and observe ! and ! on page 84 first.

The parking ticket holder » Fig. 80 is provided for the attachment of e.g. parking tickets.

Storage compartment on the driver's side

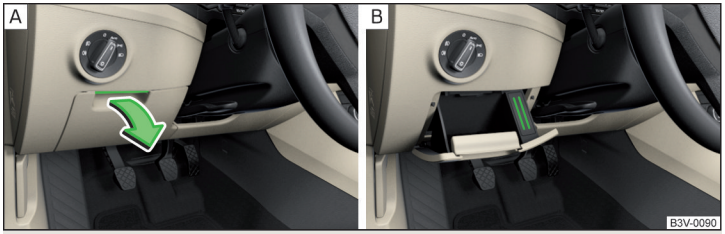

Fig. 81 **Opening the storage compartment / card holder**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 84 first.

› To **open**, lift the handle and fold out the compartment in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 81 A.
› To **close**, swing the lid against the direction of the arrow until it audibly clicks into place.

A card holder is located in the storage compartment » Fig. 81 B.

stowage compartments in the doors

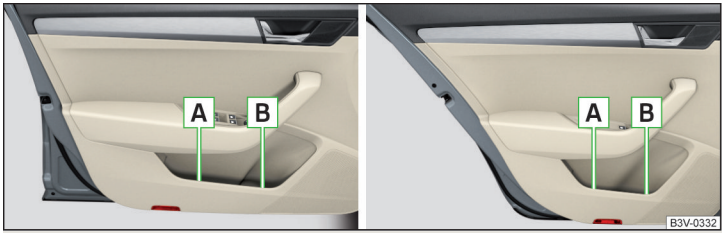

Fig. 82 **Storage compartments: in the front door / in the rear door**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 84 first.

Storage compartments » Fig. 82
A Storage compartment
B Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 l

! WARNING

The storage compartment A » Fig. 82n the front door is to be used exclusively for storing objects which do not protrude - there is the danger of limiting the operating range of the side airbags.

Storage compartment in the front centre console

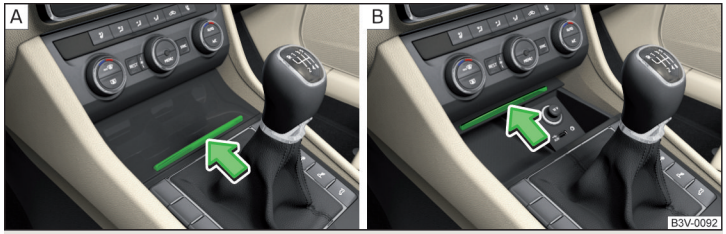

Fig. 83 **Storage compartment: open/close**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 84 first.

The storage compartment is equipped with an interior light which illuminates when the parking or low beam headlights are on.

› To **open**, press the edge of the lid in the direction of arrow » Fig. 83 A.
› To **close**, press the edge of the lid in the direction of arrow » Fig. 83 B. The lid closes automatically.

Phonebox

Fig. 84
Phonebox

Read and observe ! and ! on page 84 first.

The storage compartment in the front centre console can be equipped with the Phonebox function.

If a phone is directed with its rear side downwards on the pad in the storage compartment » Fig. 84, the phone signal is amplified by the roof antenna.

Phones that support the Qistandard for wireless charging, can also be charged wirelessly in the storage compartment. At the start of the wireless charging, the appropriate message appears in the Infotainment display.

Note

- For the optimum phone signal strength and uninterrupted wireless charging, we recommend position the phone in the storage compartment without the protective sleeve, if possible. It should also be ensured that no metallic objects (e.g. coins or keys) are located under the telephone.
- It is normal for the telephone to heat up during the wireless charging.

USB and AUX input

Fig. 85 **USB input, front / rear**

Fig. 86
AUX input

Read and observe ! and ! on page 84 first.

The USB input (shown with ⇠) is located in the storage compartment in the front centre console and, depending on equipment fitted, also in the rear » Fig. 85.

The AUX input can be found in the stowage compartment of the front centre console » Fig. 86.

Information on use » *Owner´s Manual / Infotainment*.

Waste container

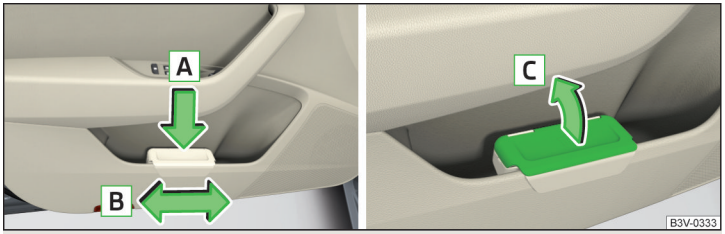

Fig. 87 **Waste container: inserting and moving / opening**

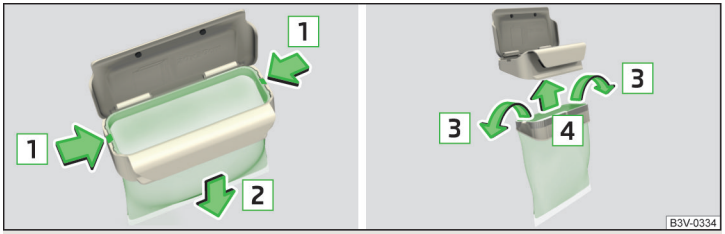

Fig. 88 **Replace bags**

Read and observe and on page 84 first.

The waste container can be inserted into the slot in the door.

Insert waste container

› Position the waste container at the front edge of the slot.
› Push the waste container in the rear area in the direction of the arrow A » Fig. 87.
› If required, push the waste container in the direction of arrow B.

Remove the waste container

› Remove the waste container in the opposite direction to the arrow A » Fig. 87.

Open/close waste container

› Lift the cover in the direction C » Fig. 87.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

Replace bags

› Remove the waste container from the slot.
› Press the two locking lugs on the frame in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 88.
› Pull the bag together with the frame downwards in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the bag from the frame.
› Pull the new bag through the frame and pull it over the bag frame in the direction of arrow 3.
› Insert the bag containing the frame in the direction of arrow 4 into the container body, so that the two lugs engage audibly with the frame.

Note

We recommend that you use 20 x 30 cm bags.

Storage compartment under the front arm rest

Fig. 89 **Open tray / control air supply**

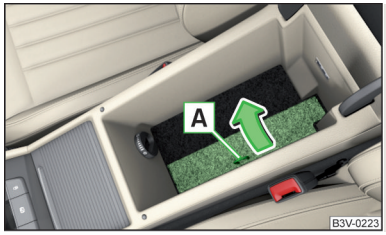

Fig. 90
Open storage compartment for the tablet

Read and observe ! and ! on page 84 first.

The storage compartment is equipped with an interior light (this is illuminated when the parking lights / low beam are switched on), a stowage compartment for the tablet and an air outlet.

Storage compartment
› To **open**, lift the armrest in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 89.
› To **close**, lift the armrest in the direction of arrow 1 until the stop and then fold down against the direction of the arrow 1.

Storage compartment for the tablet
› To **open**, pull on the loop A in the direction of arrow » Fig. 90.
› Place the tablet carefully to avoid damage to any connected cables.

Air supply
› To **open**, turn the rotary switch until it stops in the position ☼ » Fig. 89.
› To **close**, turn the rotary switch until it stops in the position ○.

The temperature of the storage compartment supplied with air is dependent on the setting in the air conditioning.

Glasses compartment

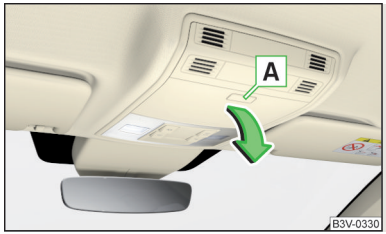

Fig. 91
Opening the glasses storage box

Read and observe ! and ! on page 84 first.

› To **open**, press the -- button. The compartment folds in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 91.
› To **close**, swivel the compartment against the direction of the arrow until it audibly clicks into place.

The maximum permissible load of the glasses compartment is 250 g.

! CAUTION
▪ Do not put any heat-sensitive objects in the glasses storage box - with high temperatures there is risk of damage.
▪ The box must be closed before leaving and locking the vehicle – risk of impairment to the functions of the anti-theft alarm system.

Storage compartment on the front passenger side

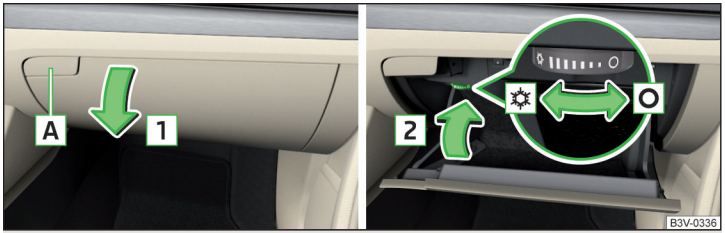

Fig. 92 **Open storage compartment / close storage compartment and open air supply**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 84 first.

The storage compartment is equipped with an interior light (this is illuminated when the parking lights / low beam are switched on), a pen holder and an air outlet.

Storage compartment
› To **open**, press the -- button. The cover folds in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 92.
› To **close**, swivel the cover in the direction of arrow 2 until it audibly clicks into place.

Air supply

› To **open**, turn the rotary switch until it stops in the position ☼» Fig. 92.
› To **close**, turn the rotary switch until it stops in the position ○.

The temperature of the storage compartment supplied with air is dependent on the setting in the air conditioning.

Storage compartment under the front passenger seat

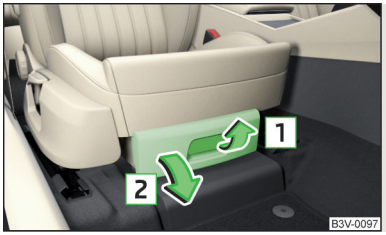

Fig. 93
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 84 first.

› To **open**, pull the handle in direction of arrow 1 pull and open the compartment in the direction of arrow 2» Fig. 93.
› To **close**, pull the handle in the direction of arrow 1 and hold this against the direction of arrow 2 until the storage compartment closes.

The maximum permissible load of the storage compartment is 1.5 kg.

Clothes hook

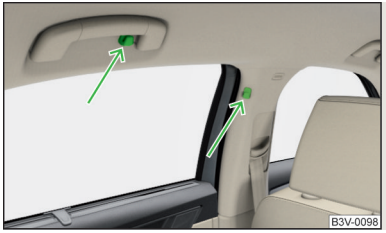

Fig. 94
Clothes hooks

Read and observe ! and ! on page 84 first.

The clothes hooks are located on the middle door pillars of the vehicle and on the handle of the headliner above each of the rear doors » Fig. 94.

The maximum permissible load of each of the hooks is 2 kg.

! WARNING

- Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing hung up.
- To hang the clothes do not use hangers - there is a risk of limiting the effectiveness of head airbags.
- Ensure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impair your vision to the outside.

Storage pockets on the backs of the front seats

Fig. 95
Map pockets

Read and observe ! and ! on page 84 first.

The storage pockets » Fig. 95 are intended for the storage of maps, magazines, etc.

Storage pockets at the inner sides of the front seats

Fig. 96
Storage pocket

Read and observe ! and ! on page 84 first.

The storage pockets are located on the inside of the driver, if necessary, also the front passenger seat » Fig. 96 and are used to store small and light objects (e.g. mobile phones).

The maximum permissible load of each of the pockets is 200 g.

Storage compartments for umbrellas

Fig. 97
Storage compartment for an umbrella - view example in the left door

Read and observe ! and ! on page 84 first.

The storage compartments in the front doors » Fig. 97 can be used to store an umbrella.

Note

We recommend that you use the umbrella from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Storage compartment in the rear centre console

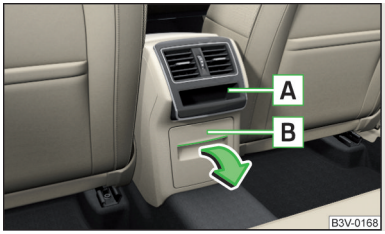

Fig. 98
Open storage compartment, open lockable storage compartments

Read and observe ! and ! on page 84 first.

In the rear centre console there is an equipment-dependent open storage compartment A and a lockable storage compartment B» Fig. 98.

› To **open**, pull the storage compartment B on the upper part of the recess and fold down the compartment in the direction of arrow » Fig. 98.
› To **close**, swivel the compartment against the direction of the arrow.

The storage compartment is equipped with an interior light which illuminates when the parking or low beam headlights are on.

Storage compartment in the rear armrest

Fig. 99 **Open storage compartment / interior of the compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 84 first.

The storage compartment provides a cup holder B, a stowage compartment for attaching the multimedia holder C as well as a pen holder D » Fig. 99.

› To **open**, hold the lid on the recess A and fold in the direction of arrow until the stop.
› To **close**, push the cover against the direction of the arrow.

Long cargo channel

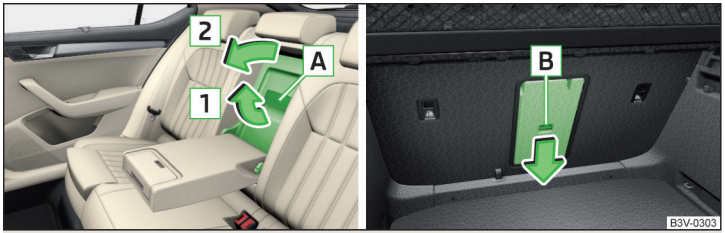

Fig. 100 **Open the cover: from the passenger compartment / from the luggage compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 84 first.

After folding-up the rear armrest and cover, an opening in the seat backrest becomes visible through which the through-loading bag with skis can be pushed.

› To **open from the passenger compartment**, fold down the rear armrest slightly » page 80.
› Pull handle A in the direction of arrow 1 and fold down the cover in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 100.
› To **open from the luggage compartment**, push the securing tab B in the direction of the arrow and fold the cover with the armrest forwards.
› To **close**, fold the cover and the rear armrest upwards until the stop. This should audibly click into place.

The cover must be secured after the closing process. Ensure that the red field above the securing tab B is not visible.

! WARNING

The through-loading channel is only intended for transporting skis that are placed in a properly secured, through-loading bag.

Removable through-loading bag

Fig. 101 **Tighten ribbon / secure through-loading bag**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 84 first.

The removable through-loading bag (hereinafter referred to as through-loading bag) is used exclusively for transporting skis (max. 4 pairs).

Stowing through-loading bag and skis

› Fold the rear armrest and the cover in the seat backrest downwards » Fig. 100 *on page 91*.
› Place the empty through-loading bag in such a way that the end of the bag with the zip is in the boot.
› Place the skis with the tips facing to the front and the sticks with the tips facing to the rear. into the through-loading bag and close the bag.

Securing through-loading bag and skis

› Tighten the strap A around the skis **in front of** the bindings» Fig. 101. The strap must hold the skis tight.
› Fold the seat backrest a little forward » page 80.
› Guide the securing strap B through the opening in the seat backrest around the upper part of the seat backrest.
› Then, fold the seat backrests back until the locking button clicks into place. Check this by pulling on the seat backrest.
› Insert the securing strap B into the lock C until it clicks into place.

! WARNING

- The total weight of the skis which are transported must not exceed 24 kg.
- Always stow and secure the skis and the bag securely - otherwise there is a risk of injury or accident!

CAUTION

Never fold and stow the through-loading bag when it is wet - risk of damaging the through-loading bag.

Cup holders

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- Do not use any cups or beakers which are made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.
- Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder. If the vehicle moves, they may spill – risk of scalding!

CAUTION

Do not leave open beverage containers in the cup holder during the journey. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking which may cause damage to the electrical components or seat upholstery.

Front cup holder

Fig. 102 **Open cup holder / cup holder**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 92 first.

The cup holder B is located in the front centre console » Fig. 102.

› To **open**, push on the lid edge A in the direction of the arrow.
› To **close**, pull on the lid edge A against the direction of the arrow.

Rear cup holder

Fig. 103 **Open cup holder / cup holder**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 92 first.

Two cup containers can be placed in the cup holder B.

› To **open**, hold the lid on the recess A and fold in the direction of arrow until the stop » Fig. 103.
› To **close**, push the cover against the direction of the arrow.

Electrical sockets

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dashboard. These objects might slide or fall down when driving and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic – risk of accident!
- Make sure that while driving no objects can enter the driver's footwell - cause an accident!
- Safely stow all devices during the journey to prevent them from being thrown around the interior in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident – risk of death!
- The devices may warm up during operation – risk of injury or fire!
- Improper use of the power sockets and the electrical accessories can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.
- The 12-Volt sockets also work if the ignition is switched off. When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle.

CAUTION

When using the 12 volt power outlets the following notes are to be observed.

- The sockets can only be used for the connection of approved electrical accessories with a total power consumption of up to 120 watts, otherwise the electrical system of the vehicle may be damaged.
- Connecting appliances when the engine is not running will drain the battery of the vehicle!
- Before switching the ignition on / off or before starting the engine, switch off the devices which are connected to the sockets - there is a risk of damage to the equipment due to voltage fluctuations.

12-volt socket in the front centre console

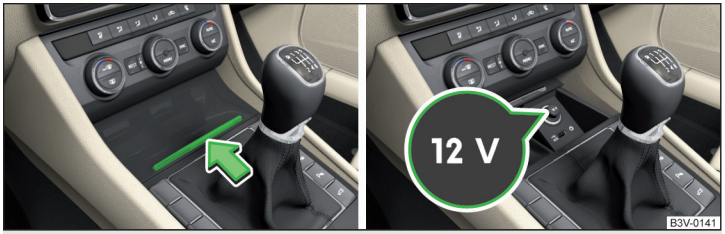

Fig. 104 **Open storage compartment / cover of the 12 volt power outlet**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 93 first.

› To **use**, open the storage compartment by pressing on the edge of the cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 104.
› Remove the cover of the socket and insert the plug of the electrical appliance in the socket.

12 volt socket in the rear centre console

Fig. 105 **Open the cover / 12 volt power outlet**

Fig. 106 **Open storage compartment / cover of the 12 volt power outlet**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 93 first.

› To **use**, fold the cover in the direction of arrow » Fig. 105.
› **or**: open the storage compartment and remove the cover of the 12-volt socket » Fig. 106.
› Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

12 volt socket in luggage compartment

Fig. 107
Cover of the 12 volt power outlet

Read and observe ! and ! on page 93 first.

› To **use**, open the cover of the socket » Fig. 107 and plug the electrical appliance plug into the socket.

230-volt socket in the rear centre console

Fig. 108 **Open the cover of the 230 volt outlet / 230 volt outlet**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 93 first.

The 230-volt socket has a child safety lock. When inserting the plug, the fuse is released, the socket is activated and the warning light above the socket is illuminates green (if this flashes red, then the socket is deactivated).

The socket works with the engine running (in STOP mode in vehicles with the START-STOP system) and for about 10 minutes after the engine is switched off, provided an appliance was still connected prior to switching off the engine (the warning light flashes green)).

› To **use**, fold up the cover of the socket in the direction of arrow » Fig. 108 and plug the electrical appliance plug into the socket.

An automatic deactivation of the socket can take place, for example, for the following reasons.
- Excessive current.
- Low state of charge of the battery.
- High outlet temperature.

If disabling reasons no longer exist, the automatic activation of the socket can be done.

! WARNING

- Make sure that no liquid or moisture enters into the socket - it can be fatal! If fluid does manage to get into the power socket, completely dry out the socket before reuse.
- The child lock on the power socket is unlocked when using adapters and extension cables which carry volts – risk of injury!
- Do no insert any objects (e.g. knitting needles) into the contacts of the power socket – risk of death!

! CAUTION

- The power socket can only be used for connecting approved electrical accessories with a two-pin 230V plug, with a total power uptake of up to 150 watt.
- The plug of the electrical appliance must be plugged in up to the stop, otherwise the child safety lock can be unlocked and the socket may be activated but the electric appliance is still not receiving power.
- Do not connect bulbs with neon tubes in the socket - there is a risk of damaging the lamp.
- For appliances with an independent power source (e.g. such as notebooks), first connect the power source itself and only after that connect the appliance.

Ashtray and cigarette lighter

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The ashtray can be used for ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like.

WARNING

Never place hot or flammable objects in the ashtray – risk of fire!

Ashtray

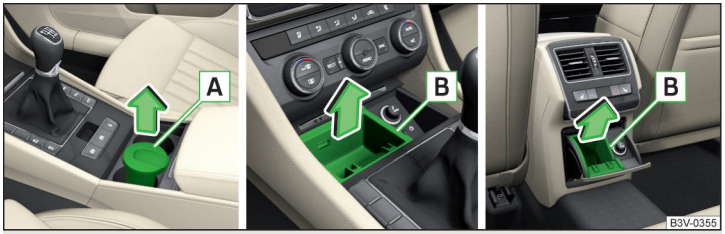

Fig. 109 **Remove front ashtray / remove front ashtray insert / remove rear ashtray insert**

Read and observe ! on page 95 first.

Removable ashtray

› Hold the ashtray A (not by the lid) **remove** in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 109.

To **insert**, proceed in reverse order.

Ashtray with removable insert

› To **remove**, open the insert of the respective ashtray, hold the insert in the area B and remove in the direction of the arrow» Fig. 109.

To **insert**, proceed in reverse order.

Cigarette lighter

Fig. 110 **Cigarette lighter: in the front centre console / in the centre console**

Read and observe ! on page 95 first.

› To **use**, open the respective storage compartment and push in the lighter until it stops.
› Wait until the glowing lighter protrudes, remove it immediately and use.
› Put the lighter back in the socket and close the respective storage compartment.

WARNING

- The cigarette lighter also works if the ignition is switched off. When leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle - there is a risk of burning, fire or damage to the vehicle interior.
- Be careful when using the cigarette lighter - it can cause burns.

Note

The cigarette lighter socket can also be used as a 12 volt socket.

Tablet holder

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

External devices (e.g. tablet, smartphone etc.) measuring min. 122 mm and max. 195 mm can be secured in the holder.

The maximum permissible load of the compartment is 750 g.

CAUTION

Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the holder - there is a risk of damage or functional impairment.

Attaching the rear headrests

Fig. 111 **Inserting: adapter / holder**

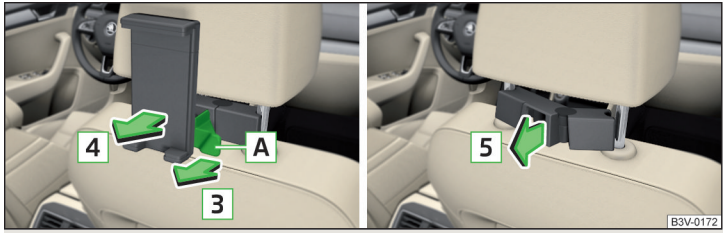

Fig. 112 **Removing: holder / adapter**

Read and observe ! on page 96 first.

› To **insert**, attach the opened adapter to the guide rods of the front headrest and clip in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 111 » !.
› Clip in the holder in the direction of arrow 2 into the adapter.
› To **remove**, pull on the securing tab A in direction of arrow 3 and take the holder in direction of arrow 4 out of the adapter » Fig. 112.
› Press the adapter and remove in the direction of the arrow 5 from the guide rods of the headrest.

WARNING

Clip in the adapter carefully - there is a risk of injuring your finger.

Attach to the storage compartment in the rear armrest

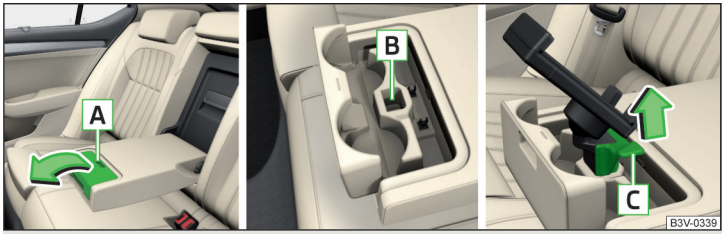

Fig. 113 **Open storage compartment / stowage compartment for holder / remove holder**

Read and observe ! on page 96 first.

› To **insert**, hold the lid on the recess A and fold open in the direction of arrow » Fig. 113.
› Insert the holder in the stowage compartment B until it stops.
› To **remove**, pull the securing tab C in direction of arrow and take the holder in direction of arrow out of the adapter.
› Fold the cover closed against the direction of the arrow.

Handling the holder

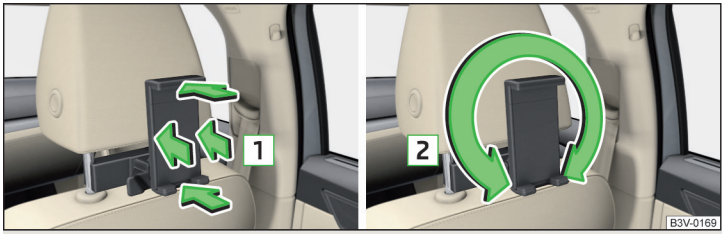

Fig. 114 **Tilting and rotating the holder**

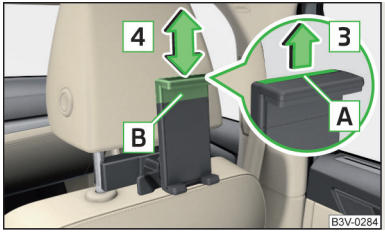

Fig. 115
Adjusting the holder size

Read and observe ! on page 96 first.

The holder may be **tipped** by 30° in the direction of the arrow 1 and **turned** by 360° in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 114.

› To **adjust the holder size**, pull out the securing tab A in the direction of arrow 3 and push the part B in the direction of arrow 4 to the desired position » Fig. 115.

Transport of cargo

Luggage compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

When transporting heavy objects, the driving characteristics change due to the shift in centre-of-gravity. The speed and style of driving must be adjusted accordingly.

When transporting cargo the following the instructions must be adhered to
- Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment and secure it with suitable lashing straps to the lashing eyes or securing nets so that they cannot slip.
- Place heavy objects as far forward as possible.
- Tyre pressure is to match the load.

In the event of an accident, even small and light objects gain so much kinetic energy that they can cause severe injuries.

The magnitude of the kinetic energy is dependent on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and the weight of the object.

Luggage compartment light
The light switches on/off when the boot lid is opened or closed.

If the boot lid is open and the ignition switched off, the light will extinguish automatically after around 10 minutes.

WARNING

- Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the respective fasteners, nets, hooks etc. Heavy objects were not secured sufficiently – risk of injury!
- Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle – risk of accident!
- An unfixed or improperly fixed load can slip during a sudden manoeuvre or an accident - danger of injury!
- Loose cargo could hit a deployed airbag and injure occupants – danger of death!
- When transporting loads in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the rear seats forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats .

CAUTION

- Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the respective fasteners, nets, hooks etc. - these could be damaged.
- Make sure that the heating elements of the rear window heater, the elements of the integrated aerial in the rear window or in the rear side windows are not damaged by abrasive items.
- Do not place sharp objects in the nets and storage compartments in the luggage compartment - there is a risk of damage to the net as well as the compartments.
- Put the items in the storage compartments carefully and not load these punctiform - there is a risk of damage to the compartments.

Fastening elements

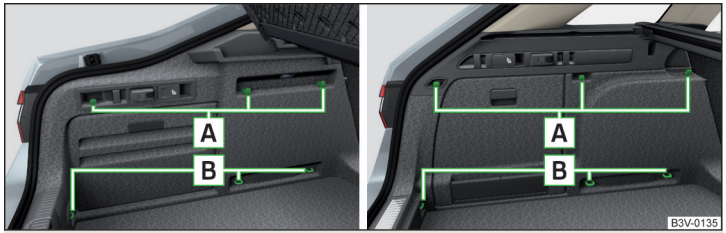

Fig. 116 **Fastening elements: variant 1/2**

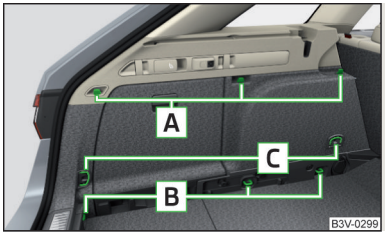

Fig. 117
Fastening elements: variant 3

Read and observe ! and ! on page 98 first.

The fasteners are located on both sides of the luggage compartment.

Overview of the fastening elements » Fig. 116 **and** » Fig. 117

A Fastening elements **only** for fastening fixing nets
B Lashing eyes for fastening cargo and securing nets
C Lashing eyes for fastening cargo and securing nets

The maximum permissible static load for the individual lashing eyes B and C is 350 kg.

Fixing nets

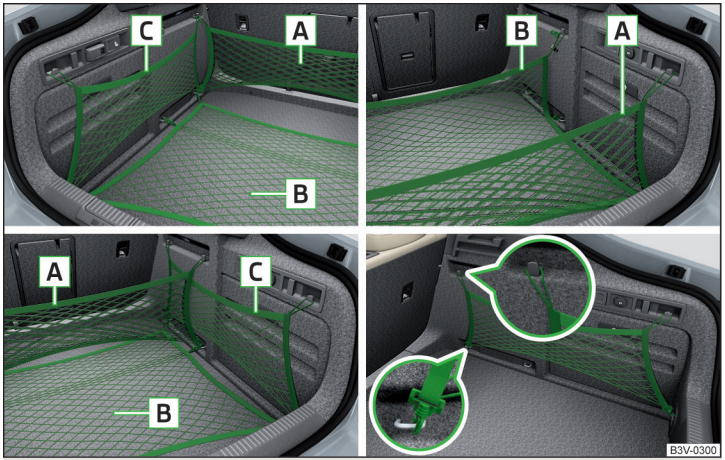

Fig. 118 **Fastening examples for nets / side pocket fastening**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 98 first.

Fastening examples for nets » Fig. 118

A Horizontal pocket
B Floor net
C Vertical pocket

The maximum permissible load of each of the nets is 1.5 kg.

If the vehicle is equipped with the variable loading floor and this is in the upper position, then the lashing eyes C» Fig. 117 *on page 98* can be used to attach the nets.

Foldable hook

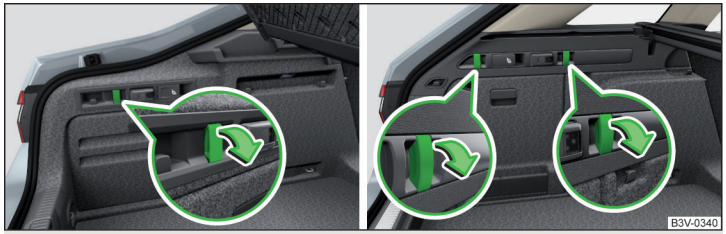

Fig. 119 **Fold down hooks: variant 1/2**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 98 first.

Foldable hooks for hanging small items of luggage, such as bags, etc., are provided on both sides of the luggage compartment.

› To **use**, fold down the hook in the direction of arrow » Fig. 119.

The maximum permissible load of the hook is 7.5 kg.

Fasten the flooring

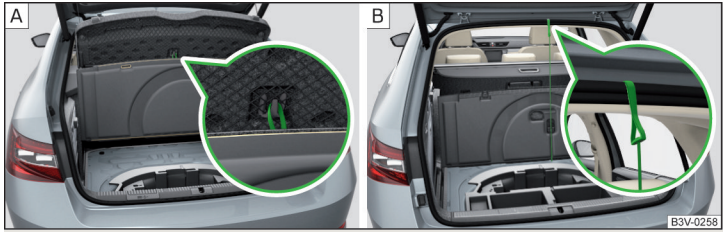

Fig. 120 **Fastening the flooring: variant 1/2**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 98 first.

Fastening options for the flooring » Fig. 120

A With the loop on a hook on the luggage compartment cover
B With the hook on the frame of the luggage compartment lid

CAUTION

For version 1, the following information applies.

- The hook on the luggage compartment cover is only provided for the fixing of the floor covering, do not hang objects on it - there is a risk of damage to hook.
- The flooring must be secured on the hook only with an open boot, therefore, before closing the lid, check to see if the flooring is attached to the hook - there is a risk of damage to hook.

CAUTION

The floor covering can be fixed with Version 2 only if the variable loading floor is folded in the upper position » Fig. 137 *on page 107*.

Floor covering on both sides

Read and observe ! and ! on page 98 first.

A double-sided floor covering can be fitted in the luggage compartment. One side is made of fabric, the other side is washable (suitable for transporting wet or dirty items).

Net on the luggage compartment cover

Fig. 121
Net on the luggage compartment cover

Read and observe ! and ! on page 98 first.

The net at the bottom of the luggage compartment cover » Fig. 121 is provided for transporting light and soft items.

The maximum permissible load of the net is 1.5 kg.

Luggage compartment cover

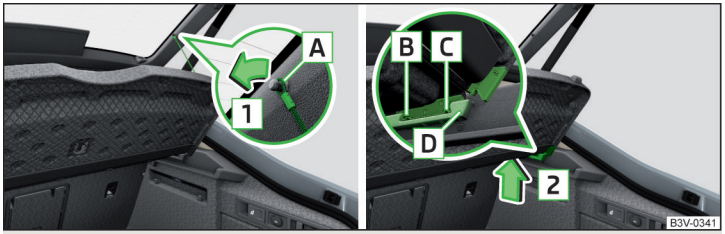

Fig. 122 **Remove the luggage compartment cover**

Fig. 123
Luggage compartment cover stowed behind the rear seats

Read and observe ! and ! on page 98 first.

If the support straps A » Fig. 122 are attached to the boot lid, then opening the lid will raise the boot lid cover (hereafter referred to as cover).

The cover can be removed from the vehicle and stowed behind the rear seat backrests if required » Fig. 123. Before removing the cover, the sunshade at the back must be rolled up» page 72.

Removing

› On both sides of the boot lid unhook the straps A in direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 122.
› Hold the raised cover and press on the two sides on the underside of the cover in the area of the recess C.
› Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow 2.

Fitting

› First, insert the front mounting B and then the rear mounting C in the recess D» Fig. 122.
› Press on the two sides on the upper side of the cover in the area of the recess D. The mountings B and C must engage with the recess D on both sides of the luggage compartment.
› On both sides of the boot lid unhook the straps A.

WARNING

During the trip there must be no objects on the cover - risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or a vehicle collision!

CAUTION

- Observe the following instructions to avoid canting and the subsequent damage to the cover or the side trim.
  - The cover must be inserted properly and the load must not exceed the height of the cover.
  - The cover must not be jammed in the surrounding seal of the luggage compartment lid when it is in the raised position.
  - There must be no object in the gap between the cover in the raise position and the rear backrest.
- Never fold the raised cover forwards to the rear seats - there is a risk of damaging the cover and the boot lid.

Roll-up cover

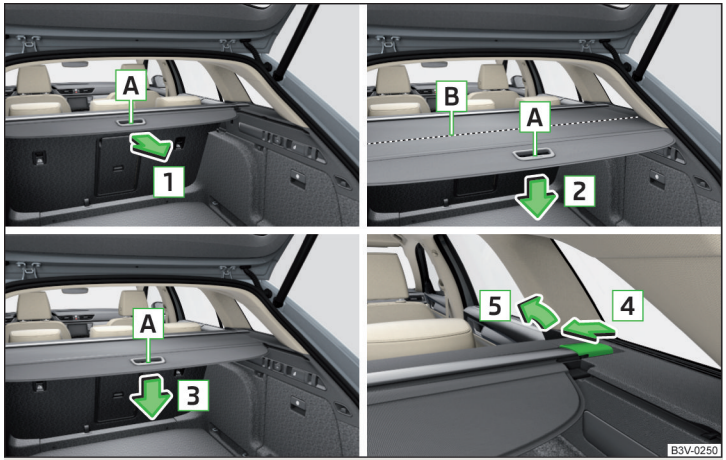

Fig. 124 **Roll-up cover: pull out / roll up / intermediate position / remove**

Fig. 125 **Remove the left side cover / store roll-up cover**

Read and observe and on page 98 first.

Extending

› Grasp the cover at grip-point A and pull it out in the direction of the arrow 1 until it audibly clicks into place» Fig. 124.

Retracting

› Push the cover in the handle area A in the direction of arrow 2. The cover rolls up automatically to the intermediate position B » Fig. 124.

The cover rolls up fully by pressing the cover in the handle area A in direction of arrow 3. The rolled-up cover can now be removed.

Removing/inserting

› Press on the side of the cross bar in the direction of arrow 4 and remove the cover in the arrow direction 5 » Fig. 124.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

Stowage

If the vehicle is equipped with the variable loading floor, then the removable roll-up luggage compartment cover can be stowed in the recesses of the luggage compartment side trim.

› Fold the variable loading floor into the upper position » page 107.
› Open the side trays on both sides of the luggage compartment and remove » Fig. 128 *on page 103* - B.
› Remove the left side cover in the arrow direction 1 » Fig. 125.
› Insert the roll-up cover in the recesses of the side trim in the direction of arrow 2 and stow in the direction of arrow 3.
› Reinsert the left side cover in the opposite direction to the arrow 1.
› Close the side compartments on both sides of the luggage compartment.
› Fold out the variable loading floor to the upper position.

! WARNING

No objects should be placed on the roll-up cover - there is a risk of damage to the cover and a risk of injury in the event of a sudden stop or a vehicle collision!

i Note

If you want to stow the roll-up luggage compartment cover and the multifunction pocket **at the same time**, then it is necessary that the rear part of the roll-up luggage compartment **covers** the multifunction pocket.

Roll-up cover - automatic rolling-up

Read and observe ! and ! on page 98 first.

The automatic rolling up of the roll-up cover (hereafter as function) eases access to the luggage compartment.

When opening the boot lid with the function activated, the roll-up cover automatic rolls-up of the intermediate position B » Fig. 124 *on page 101*.

This function can be **activated/deactivated** in Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.

i Note

The setting (activation/deactivation) of the automatic rolling up is stored (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 46.

Multi-function pocket

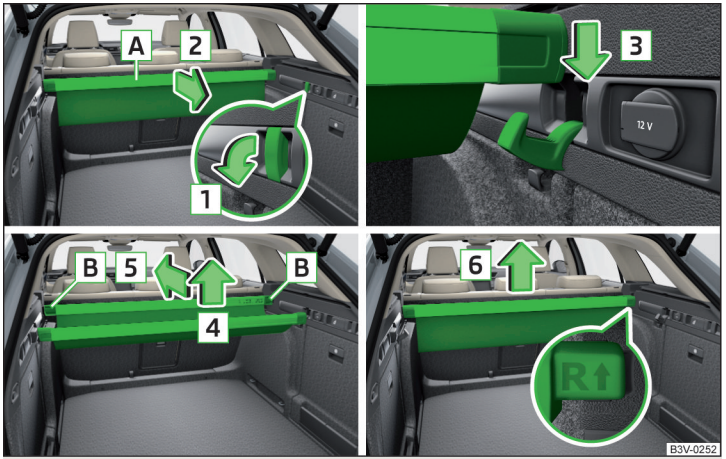

Fig. 126 **Multifunction pocket: pull out / insert / push in / remove**

Fig. 127 **Remove the left side cover / store multifunction tray**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 98 first.

The multifunction pocket (following as pocket) is provided for the storage of clothing and light objects with no sharp edges.

The maximum permissible load of the multifunction box is 3 kg.

Removal and fitting

› Fold down the front hooks on both sides of the luggage compartment in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 126.
› Grasp the rear bar A with both hands and withdraw the pocket in arrow direction 2.
› Place the rear bar onto the two hooks that are folded forward in the direction of the arrow 3 all the way to the stop.

Pushing in

› Remove the rear bar of the hook in direction of arrow 4 push in the pocket in the direction of arrow 5 » Fig. 126.
› Place the rear bar against the front bar and press them together at both ends B.
› The front hooks on both sides of the luggage compartment fold back opposite to the direction of arrow 1.

Removing/inserting

› Remove the roll-up luggage compartment cover » page 101.
› Remove the pocket from the fittings in the direction of the arrow 6 » Fig. 126.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

› Insert the end of the bar marked R ↑ in the right-hand mounting, and the end marked ↑ L in the left-hand mounting. The arrows should be pointing forward.

Stowage

If the vehicle is equipped with the variable loading floor, then the removable pocket cover can be stowed in the recesses of the luggage compartment side trim.

› Fold the variable loading floor into the upper position » page 107.
› Open the side trays on both sides of the luggage compartment » Fig. 128 *on page 103* - B.
› Remove the left side cover in the arrow direction 1 » Fig. 127.
› Insert the pocket in the recesses of the side trim in the arrow direction 2 and stow in the direction of arrow 3.
› Reinsert the left side cover in the opposite direction to the arrow 1.
› Close the side compartments on both sides of the luggage compartment.
› Fold out the variable loading floor to the upper position.

Note

If you want to stow the roll-up luggage compartment cover and the multifunction pocket **at the same time**, then it is necessary that the rear part of the roll-up luggage compartment **covers** the multifunction pocket.

Side storage compartment and trays

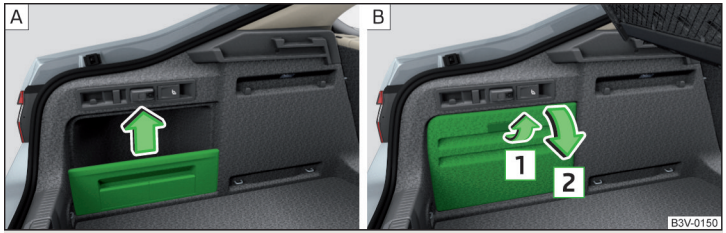

Fig. 128 **Side shelf removal / open side pocket**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 98 first.

Located at the two sides of the luggage compartment, depending on vehicle equipment are side trays » Fig. 128 - A or lockable side compartments » Fig. 128 - B.

The space behind the tray and in the tray is provided for storing small objects up to a total weight of 2.5 kg.

Side compartment

› **Remove** » Fig. 128 the compartment in the direction of arrow A.

To **insert**, proceed in reverse order.

Side compartment

› To **open**, pull the handle in direction of arrow 1 and open the compartment in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 128 B. The tray can be removed.
› To **close**, swivel the compartment against the direction of arrow 2.

Cargo element

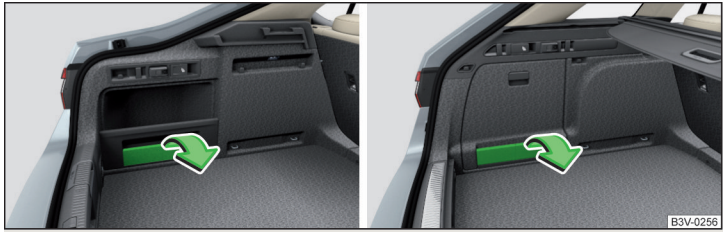

Fig. 129 **Removing cargo elements: variant 1/2**

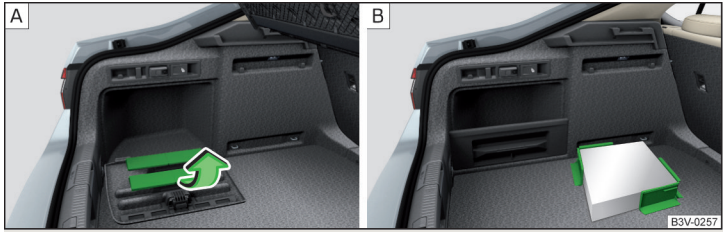

Fig. 130 **Removing cargo elements: variant 3/mounting example of the cargo using the cargo elements**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 98 first.

The cargo elements are designed for mounting and securing loads with a maximum gross weight of 8 kg.

› To **use**, remove the cargo elements in the direction of the arrows » Fig. 129 and » Fig. 130 A.
› Use the cargo elements to secure the load as close as possible to the rear seats » Fig. 130 B.
› After use, secure the cargoelements in their original position.

Storage compartments under the floor covering

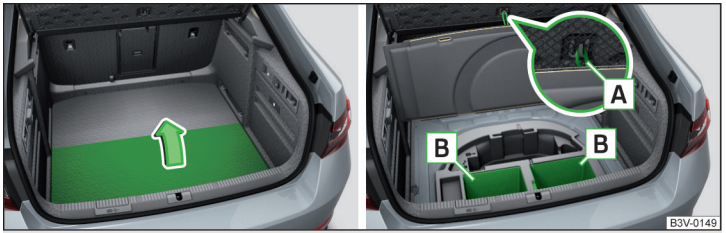

Fig. 131 **Variant 1: lifting flooring & storage compartments**

Fig. 132 **Variant 2: lifting flooring & storage compartments**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 98 first.

For vehicles that are not equipped with an emergency spare wheel located under the flooring of the luggage compartment B » Fig. 131 or » Fig. 132.

Every storage compartment B is designed for storing small objects of up to 15 kg. in weight in total.

Using the storage compartments - variant 1

› Lift the flooring via loop A in the direction of arrow » Fig. 131 and completely fold back or fasten using the loop on the hook on the luggage compartment cover.
› Stow the cargo in the storage compartments.
› Fold back the flooring against the direction of the arrow or remove it from the hook.

When transporting tall objects in the compartments, the flooring must be folded forward.

Using the storage compartments - variant 2

› Dividing the luggage compartment with variable loading floor » page 107.
› Lift the floor covering in the direction of arrow » Fig. 132 and hook into hook C on the upper edge of the variable loading floor.
› Stow the cargo in the storage compartments.
› Unhook hook C and fold back the flooring against the direction of the arrow (fold back the variable loading floor to the initial position if necessary).

When transporting tall objects in the compartments, the hook C must be hooked onto the upper edge of the variable loading floor.

CAUTION

▪ Before closing the boot lid check that the flooring is not attached to the hook with the loop A » Fig. 131 - there is a risk of damaging the hook.
▪ Before closing the boot lid, check that the cargo transported in the storage compartments does not strike against the luggage compartment cover - there is a risk of damage to the lid.

Removable light

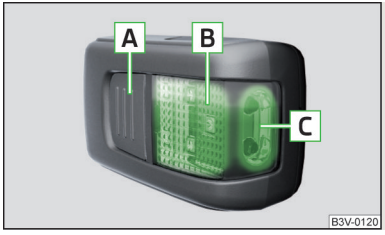

Fig. 133
Removable lamp

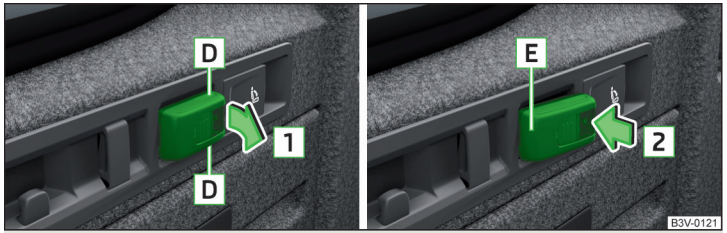

Fig. 134 **Removable light: removing / inserting**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 98 first.

The light is located on the left side of the luggage compartment and is used to light the luggage compartment or as a portable light.

The lamp is fitted with magnets. As a result, this can, for example, be fitted to the vehicle body.

Description of the light » Fig. 133

A Button to turn on / off the light
B Part that lights up when the lamp is in the mount
C Part that lights up when the lamp is not in the mount

If the light is in the **mount**, this will illuminate when the boot lid is opened.

› To **remove**, hold the light in the area D and swivel in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 134.
› To **switch on** the removed light, press button A » Fig. 133. Pressing the light again will **switched it off**.
› To **insert**, first of all insert the light with the rear part E into the mount » Fig. 134 and then push the light in the direction of arrow 2 until it audibly clicks into place.

If the light is not switched off and is correctly inserted in the mount, the LED diodes in the front part of the light C » Fig. 133 are automatically switched off.

If the lamp is not correctly inserted into the holder, this does not light up when the boot lid is opened and the rechargeable batteries are not charged.

Lamp charges

The lamp is supplied by three rechargeable type NiMH AAA batteries. The batteries are charged continuously with the engine running (to fully charge the battery takes approximately 3 hours).

Replace batteries » page 207.

CAUTION

The light is not waterproof, so it must be protected from humidity - otherwise there is risk of damage.

Class N1 vehicles

Read and observe ! and ! on page 98 first.

In class N1 vehicles that are not fitted with a protective grille, a lashing set that complies with the EN 12195 standard (1-4) must be used for fastening the load.

Proper functioning of the electrical installation is essential for safe vehicle operation. It is important to ensure that the electrical installation is not damaged during the adjustment process or when the storage area is being loaded and unloaded.

Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Estate)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Positions of the variable loading floor

Fig. 135 **Set variable loading floor to the upper position / variable loading floor in the upper position**

Fig. 136 **Set variable loading floor to the lower position / variable loading floor in the lower position**

The variable loading floor can be set to the upper or lower position.

Set to the upper position

› Lift the variable loading floor by the handle A » Fig. 135 about 20 cm high and pull towards you.
› Lift the loading floor to the height of the roll-up luggage compartment cover in the direction of arrow 1 until you hear the clicking sound and press forward.

The area under the variable loading floor can be used to stow small objects. The maximum permissible load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg. For the transport of heavy loads, adjust the variable loading floor in the lower position » Fig. 136.

Set into the lower position

› Check that the area below the variable loading floor is empty.
› Lift the variable loading floor by the handle A » Fig. 136 over the loading edge in the direction of arrow 2.
› Pull the loading floor towards you in the direction of arrow 3 until it sinks to the bottom position, and push forward.

Fold together / fold out the variable loading floor

Fig. 137 **Fold up variable loading floor / folded variable cargo floor in the upper position**

› To **fold together**, hold the variable loading floor on the handle A and lift in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 137.
› Fold up the variable loading floor by moving it in the direction of the arrow 2.

Folding out takes place in reverse order.

The variable loading floor is folded together / out in the same way in the upper and lower position.

Dividing the luggage compartment

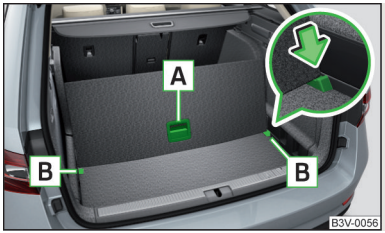

Fig. 138
Dividing the boot with variable loading floor

› To **divide**, lift the variable loading floor by the handle A and push in the rear edge of the variable loading floor in the grooves B in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 138.

The variable loading floor is secured against movements in the grooves B.

Folding out takes place in reverse order.

The variable loading floor is divided in the same way in the upper and lower position.

Net partition

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Using the net partition

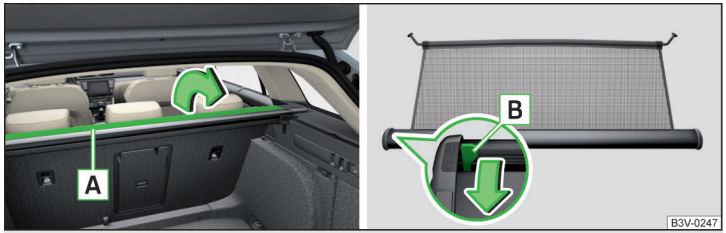

Fig. 139 **Open part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover / release lever**

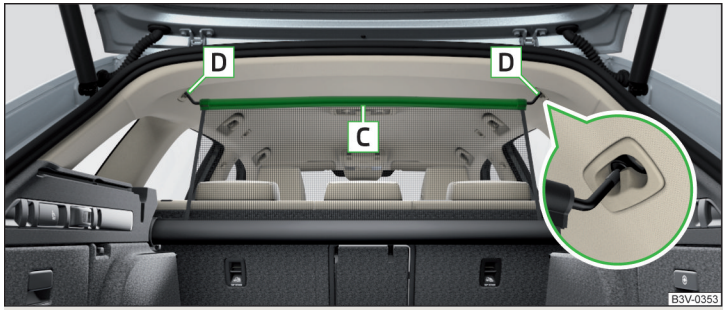

Fig. 140 **Correctly secure net partition behind the front seats in the pulled-out state**

The net partition can either be pulled out and secured from behind the rear seats or behind the front seats.

Pull out and secure the net partition behind the rear seats

› Fold out part A of the roll-up luggage compartment cover in the direction of arrow » Fig. 139.
› Pull out the net partition at the crossbar C, insert in one of the mountings D and push forwards » Fig. 140.
› Insert the crossbar on the other side of the vehicle in the mounting D in the same way.
› Make sure that the crossbar is firmly seated in the two mountings D.
› Fold back part A of the roll-up luggage compartment cover in the opposite direction of the arrow » Fig. 139.

Using the net partition behind the rear seats

› Fold out part A of the roll-up luggage compartment cover in the direction of arrow » Fig. 139.
› First pull the crossbar back slightly on the one side and then on the other side and remove it from the mountings D » Fig. 140.
› **Hold** the crossbar C in such a way that the net partition can slowly roll up without being damaged.
› Fold back part A of the roll-up luggage compartment cover in the opposite direction of the arrow » Fig. 139.

Pull out and secure the net partition behind the front seats

The process is analogous to that for behind the rear seats. Before removing the net partition, the rear seat backrests should be folded forwards. After rolling up the net partition in the housing, the rear seat backrests should then be folded back » page 80.

CAUTION

If the net partition blocks when pulling it out, push the release lever B in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 139.

Removing and installing the net partition housing

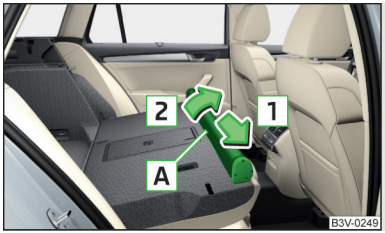

Fig. 141 **Removing the net partition housing**

› To **remove**, fold forwarded the rear seat backrests and open the rear right door.
› Push the housing A in the direction of the arrow 1 and remove it from the mountings in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 141.
› To **install**, insert the recesses on the housing A into the mountings on the rear seat backrests and push the housing against the arrow 1 up to the stop.
› Fold the rear seat backrests to their original position.

Transportation on the roof rack

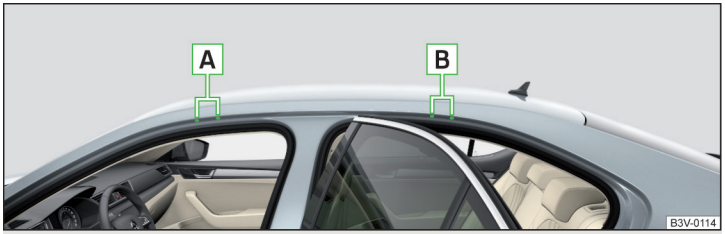

Fig. 142 **Attachment points**

The attachment points A and B are located on both sides of the vehicle » Fig. 142.

The mounting and dismounting of the basic carrier is carried out according to the instructions provided.

Roof load
The maximum permitted weight of the load incl. the carrier is 100 kg.

WARNING

For road safety when transporting cargo on the roof rack, observe the following instructions.
- Always distribute the load on the roof rack evenly and secure properly using suitable lashing straps or tensioning straps.
- When transporting heavy objects or objects which take up a large area on the roof rack system, the handling of the car may change as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity. The style of driving and speed must therefore be adapted to the current circumstances.
- The permissible roof load, permissible axle loads and permissible total vehicle weight must not be exceeded under any circumstances – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Make sure that the sliding / tilting roof or the boot lid does not collide with the roof load when opened.
- Ensure the roof aerial is not impaired by the load being transported.

Note

We recommend that you use a roof rack from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Heating and ventilation

Heating, manual air conditioning system, Climatronic

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The heating heats and ventilates the vehicle interior. The air conditioning system also cools and dehumidifies the vehicle interior.

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

The cooling system works under the following conditions.

✓ The cooling system is switched on.
✓ The engine is running.
✓ The outside temperature is below 2 ° C.
✓ The blower is switched on.

Fogging is prevented when the cooling system is switched on.

To increase the effect of the cooling system, the recirculated air mode can be switched on briefly » page 112.

Health protection

To reduce health risks (e.g. common colds), the following instructions for the use of the cooling system are to be observed.

- The difference between the indoor temperature and the outdoor air temperature should not be greater than about 5 ° C.
- The cooling system should be turned off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey.
- Once a year, the air conditioning should be disinfected by a specialist garage.

WARNING

- The blower should always be on to prevent the windows from misting. Otherwise there could be an accident.
- Under certain circumstances, air at a temperature of about 5 °C can flow out of the vents when the cooling system is switched on.

Note

- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of e.g. ice, snow or leaves to ensure that the heating and cooling system operates properly.
- After switching on the cooling **Condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is not a leak!
- If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system is switched off to ensure that the engine cools down.

Heating and manual air conditioning

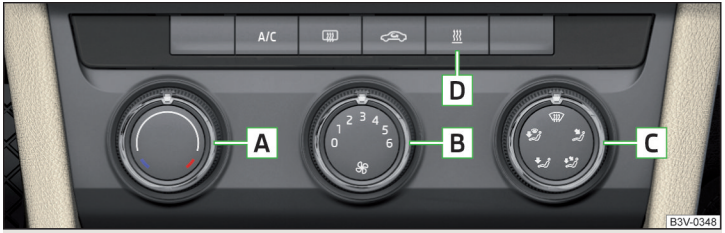

Fig. 143 **Controls of the heating / air conditioning**

Read and observe ! on page 110 first.

Individual functions can be set or switched on by turning the dial or pressing the corresponding button » Fig. 143.

A Setting temperature
- Reduce temperature / increase temperature

B Set the blower speed (Level 0: Blower off, level 6: highest speed)

C Set the direction of the air outlet » page 113

D Depending on equipment fitted:
- Auxiliary heating and ventilation on / switch off » page 114
- Switching the windscreen heater on/off » page 71

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

Switch on/off the rear window heating » page 71

Switch recirculation on/off » page 112

When the function is switched on, the indicator lamp below the button lights up.

Information on the cooling system

After pressing the button **A/C**, the warning light underneath the button illuminates even if not all conditions are met for the cooling system. The cooling system operates only if the following conditions are met » page 110.

When the air distribution control is turned to position the cooling system is activated.

Note

To ensure adequate thermal comfort, during operation of the manual air conditioning there could be an increase in the engine idle speed in some circumstances.

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning)

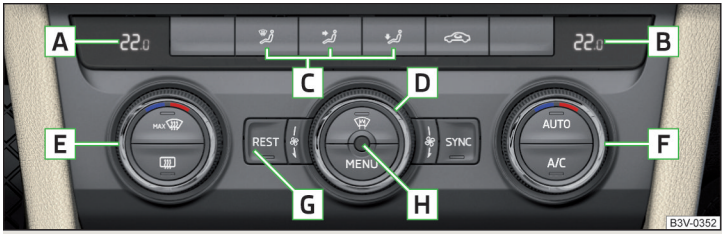

Fig. 144 **Front operating elements**

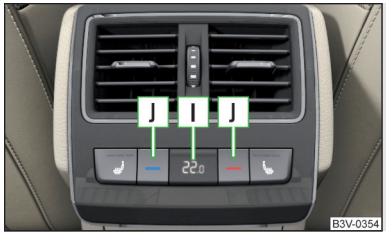

Fig. 145
Rear operating elements

Read and observe ! on page 110 first.

Individual functions can be set or switched on by turning the dial or pressing the corresponding button » Fig. 144.

A Display the temperature setting for the left side

B Display the temperature setting for the right side

C Set the direction of the air outlet » page 113

D Adjust fan speed (the setting is indicated by the number of illuminated control lamps shown in the knob)
- Turn to the left: Reduce speed up to turning off the Climatronic
- Turn to the right: Increase speed

E Adjust the temperature for the left side (if applicable for the entire vehicle interior) [1]
- Reduce temperature / increase temperature

F Set the temperature for the right-hand side (if necessary set for the entire vehicle interior) [2]
- Reduce temperature / increase temperature

G Depending on equipment fitted:
- Auxiliary heating and ventilation on / switch off » page 114
- **REST** Residual heat function on / off » page 112

H Interior temperature sensor

I Display of the temperature set in the rear

J Set the temperature at rear - the controls can be locked in Infotainment with the function surface REAR » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.
- Reduce temperature / increase temperature

Switch recirculation on/off » page 112

[1] Applies to left-hand drive vehicles.

[2] Applies to right-hand drive vehicles.

MAX Intense air flow to the windscreen on / off (when switching on, the air flow to the windows and **A/C** is also switched on)

Switch on/off the rear window heating » page 71

Switching the windscreen heater on/off » page 71

MENU Climatronic set in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*

SYNC Synchronize the temperature inside the entire vehicle according to the temperature setting on the driver's side

AUTO Switching on automatic mode » page 112

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

When the function is switched on, an indicator lamp lights up inside or below the button.

Some functions can also be operated in Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.

Setting temperature
The temperature can be set on the Climatronic control unit or in Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*. In the range between 16 ° C to 29.5 ° C, an automatic temperature control takes place.

At a temperature setting below 16 ° C, **LO** lights up in the temperature display, the Climatronic functions with **maximum cooling performance**.

At a temperature setting over 29.5 ° C, **HI** lights up in the temperature display, the Climatronic functions with **maximum heating output**.

Residual heat function REST
After switching off the ignition, the engine residual heat is used for heat retention in the vehicle interior. The function can only be switched on with the ignition off within 30 minutes after stopping the engine. The residual heat function turns off after about 30 minutes, or when the battery has a low charge state.

CAUTION
Do not cover the interior temperature sensor H » Fig. 144 - the function of the Climatronic could be affected.

Note
- In order to ensure adequate thermal comfort, there may be an increase in engine idle speed during operation of the Climatronic in some circumstances.
- The setting of the Climatronic is stored in the active user account personalisation » page 46.

Climatronic - automatic operation

Read and observe ! on page 110 first.

The automatic mode is used in order to maintain a constant temperature and to demist the windows in the interior of the car.

› To **turn on**, press the **AUTO** » Fig. 144 *on page 111* button.
› To **turn off**, press any button for the air distribution or change the blower speed. The temperature regulation is continued.

Holding the button **AUTO** will turn on **SYNC** automatically.

Operating modes
Automatic mode works in three modes - moderate, medium, and intensive. Setting the individual operating modes» *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.

After the automatic mode is switched on, Climatronic works in the last selected mode. The currently selected mode is displayed in the Infotainment display.

Air distribution control

Read and observe ! on page 110 first.

The recirculation mode prevents contaminated outside air getting into the Interior of the vehicle. In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior.

› To **switch on**, press the button. The warning light below the button lights up.
› To **switch off**, press the button again. The warning light below the button goes out.

Heating and manual air conditioning system
If the air distribution control is set to position when the recirculation modes is switched on, the recirculated-air mode is switched off. By pressing the button, the air recirculation also in this position can be switched on again.

When the **A/C** is switched on and the temperature regulator is turned to the left, the recirculated-air mode is switched on.

Climatronic
The Climatronic can have a sensor that measures the air recirculation mode and automatically turns on if there is an increased concentration of pollutants in the incoming air.

When the pollutant concentration decreases to the normal level, the recirculated air mode is automatically switched off.

The automatic on / off of the air recirculation function can be set in Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*. This only works when the outside temperature is above 2 ° C.

An automatic shut-off of the air recirculation function is performed by pressing the **AUTO** button, possibly depending on the moisture conditions in the vehicle interior.

WARNING

The air recirculation cannot be switched on for a longer period of time because there is no supply of fresh air from the outside. "Stale air" may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. As soon as the windows mist up, turn the air recirculation mode off immediately - there is a risk of accident!

CAUTION

We recommend not smoking in the vehicle when the recirculating air operation is switched on. The smoke sucked from inside the vehicle is deposited on the evaporator of the air conditioner. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor).

Air outlet vents

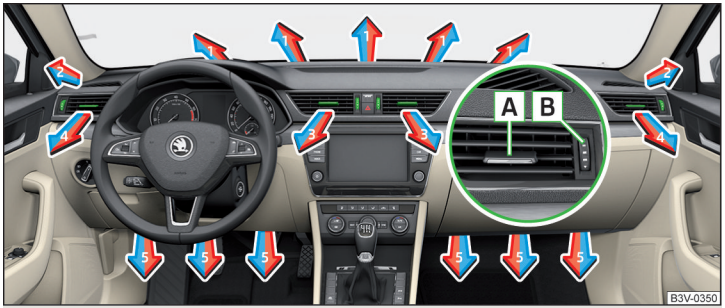

Fig. 146 **Air vents at the front**

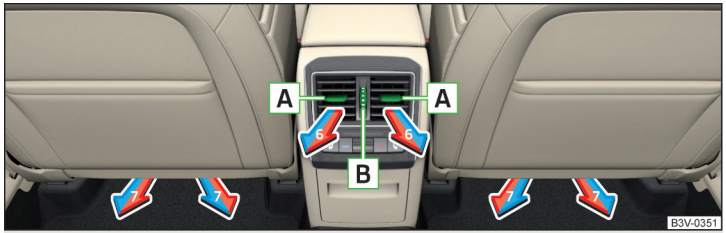

Fig. 147 **Air vents at the rear**

Read and observe ! on page 110 first.

The direction of airflow can be adjusted using the air outlet vents **3**, **4** » Fig. 146 and **6** » Fig. 147, and the vents can be opened and closed individually.

The setting of the airflow direction is carried out by moving the adjustment element A » Fig. 146 or » Fig. 147 in the desired direction.

› To **open**, turn the controller B » Fig. 146 or » Fig. 147 upwards.
› To **close**, turn the controller B » Fig. 146 or » Fig. 147 downwards.

Depending on the setting of the air distribution, the air stream comes out of the following air vents.

Set the direction of the air outlet	Air vents » Fig. 146 and » Fig. 147
/	1. 2. 4
	1. 2. 4. 5. 7
	3. 4. 6
	4. 5. 7
	3. 4. 5. 6. 7

CAUTION

Do not cover the air vents - the air distribution could be compromised.

Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The **auxiliary heating** heats the vehicle interior as well as the engine. For heating, fuel is consumed from the fuel tank.

The **auxiliary ventilation** enables fresh air to flow into the vehicle interior with the engine switched off, whereby the interior temperature is effectively decreased (e.g. with the vehicle parked in the sun).

The auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) (referred to just as auxiliary heating in the following) ensures the heating / ventilation depending on the setting of the air conditioning and the air outlet vents before switching off the ignition.

WARNING

- The auxiliary heating must never be operated in closed rooms (e.g. garages) – risk of poisoning!
- The auxiliary heating must not be allowed to run during refuelling – risk of fire.
- The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating is located on the underside of the vehicle. If you want to use the auxiliary heating, do not park the car in places where the exhaust fumes can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel etc. - risk of fire.

CAUTION

The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free (e.g. of ice, snow or leaves) to ensure that the auxiliary heating operates properly.

Note

- The auxiliary heating only switches the blower on, if it has achieved a coolant temperature of approx. 50 °C.
- In the engine compartment, water vapour may form during the operation of the heater.

Switch on / off

Fig. 148 **Button for switching on / off the Climatronic / manual air conditioning**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 114 first.

Functional requirements of the auxiliary heating.

✓ The charge state of the vehicle battery is sufficient.

✓ The fuel supply is adequate (the warning light is not illuminated in the instrument cluster).

Manual on / off

▸ Using the button on the operating part of the air conditioning» Fig. 148.

▸ Using the (switch on) / **OFF** (switch off) button on the remote control operation.

Automatic on / off

▸ Via an automatically programmed and activated pre-set time in Infotainment.

▸ According to the environmental conditions.

Switching off the auxiliary heating takes place automatically when there is a lack of fuel (warning light in the instrument cluster lights up).

After switching off the system, the coolant pump and the auxiliary heating will continue running a little while longer in order to burn the remaining fuel in the heating.

Setting automatic on / off

Climatronic: on the Climatronic operating part, press the **MENU** button, then tap the function surface in the Infotainment display. There will be a display of the last set operating mode with the option to change this.

Manual air conditioning: on Infotainment, press the CAR button, then tap the function surface in the Infotainment display.

Then follow the instructions in the Infotainment display.

When automatic switching on is activated, the warning light in the symbol button lights up for about 10 seconds after the ignition is turned off » Fig. 148.

Remote control

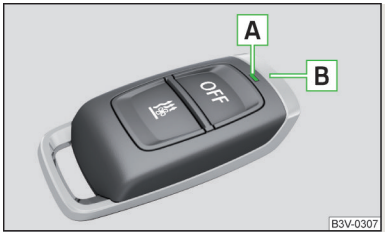

Fig. 149
Radio remote control

Read and observe ! and ! on page 114 first.

Description of the remote control » Fig. 149

A Warning light
B Aerial
Switch on the auxiliary heating
OFF Switch off the auxiliary heating

To switch the remote control on or off, hold the remote control vertically, with the aerial B » Fig. 149 pointing upwards. The antenna must not be covered with the fingers or the palm of the hand during this process.

The auxiliary heating can only be switched on/off safely using the remote control if the distance between the radio remote control and the vehicle is at least 2 m.

Display warning light A	Meaning
Lights up green for 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating has been switched on.
Lights up red for 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating has been switched off.
Slowly flashes green for 2 seconds.	The ignition signal was not received.
Quickly flashes green for 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating is blocked, e.g. because the tank is nearly empty or there is a fault in the auxiliary heating.
Flashes red for 2 seconds.	The switch off signal was not received.
Lights up orange for 2 seconds, then green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was received.
Lights up orange for 2 seconds, then flashes green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was not received.
Flashes orange for 5 seconds.	The battery is discharged, however the switching on or off signal was not received.

Replace the battery » page 206.

! CAUTION

- The remote control must be protected against moisture, severe shocks and direct sunlight - there is a risk of damage to the remote control.
- The range of the remote control with a charged battery is a few hundred metres (depending on obstructions between the remote control and the vehicle, weather conditions, the battery condition etc.).

Driving

Starting-off and Driving

Starting and stopping the engine

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Depending on equipment fitted, it is possible to switch the ignition on/off and start/stop the engine with the **key in the ignition** or using the **starter button**.

WARNING

- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- The ignition must always be switched during the journey when the engine is idling. Otherwise, the steering may lock - danger of an accident!
- Do not withdraw the ignition key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a stop » page 122, *Parking*. Otherwise, the steering may lock - danger of an accident!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running - there is a risk of theft, accident etc.!
- Never run the engine in an enclosed space (e.g. in garages) - there is the danger of poisoning and death!

CAUTION

- Only start the engine when the engine and the vehicle are stationary - there is a danger of starter and engine damage!
- Do not push-start the engine – there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter! The battery from another vehicle can be used as a push-start aid.
- On vehicles with the starter button, pay attention to where the key is located. The system can recognize the valid key, even if it has been accidentally left on the vehicle roof - there is danger of loss or damage to the key!

Note

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. The engine will reach its operating temperature faster.

Electronic immobilizer and steering lock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 116 first.

The electronic immobiliser (hereinafter referred to as immobiliser) makes it more difficult for someone to attempt to steal or use your vehicle without authorisation.

Immobilizer

The immobilizer enables the engine start exclusively using the original vehicle keys.

Malfunction of the immobilizer

If the immobiliser components in the key fail, it is not possible to start the engine. A message appears in the display of the instrument cluster to explain that the immobiliser is active.

To start, use the other vehicle key or seek help from a specialist garage.

Steering lock - lock

› On vehicles with **ignition lock**, remove the key and turn the steering wheel until the steering lock engages.
› On vehicles with a **starter button**, switch off the ignition and open the driver's door. If the driver's door is opened and the ignition is switched off afterwards, the steering is only locked automatically after the vehicle has been locked.

Steering lock - unlock

› On vehicles with **ignition lock**, insert the key into the ignition and turn on the ignition. If this is not possible, move the steering wheel slightly back and forth and thereby unlock the steering lock.
› On vehicles with **starter button**, get into the car and close the driver's door. Under certain circumstances, the steering lock can be unlocked only when the ignition is switched on or the engine is started.

WARNING

Never let the vehicle roll with locked steering lock - there is a risk of accident!

Switch on/off ignition

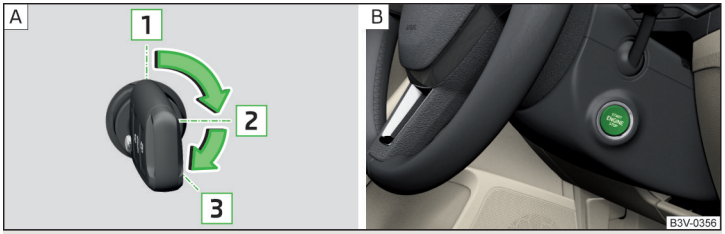

Fig. 150 **Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock / starter button**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 116 first.

Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock » Fig. 150 - A

1 Ignition switched off, engine switched off
2 Ignition switched on
3 Starting engine

Switching on /off ignition in vehicles with starter button

› Press the » Fig. 150 - B button, the ignition is turned on / off.

On vehicles with **manual transmission** the pedal must not be depressed to switch on / off the ignition, otherwise the engine will start.

On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, the brake pedal must not be depressed to switch on / off the ignition, otherwise the engine will start.

Starting / stopping the engine

Read and observe ! and ! on page 116 first.

Before starting the engine

› Switch on the parking brake.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, shift gear stick to neutral, depress the clutch pedal and hold it there until the engine starts.
› For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in position **P** or **N** and » !depress the brake pedal until the engine starts.

Starting the engine

› On vehicles with **Ignition lock**, turn the key to position 3 and the engine starts» Fig. 150 *on page 117* A. Release the key, the engine will start automatically.

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, turn the key to position 1. Repeat the starting process after 30 seconds.

› On vehicles with **starter button**, press the button briefly » Fig. 150 *on page 117* - B, the motor will start automatically.

For vehicles with **Diesel engines** the glow plug warning light illuminates during starting. The engine can be started after the indicator light goes out.

Stopping the engine

› Stopping the vehicle.
› On vehicles with **ignition lock**, turn the key to position 1 » Fig. 150 *on page 117* A.
› On vehicles with **starter button**, press the button » Fig. 150 *on page 117* - B, The engine and the ignition will be switched off simultaneously.

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the ignition key can only be removed if the selector lever is in position **P** .

Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been running for a prolonged period at high loads. Leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

Emergency shutdown of the engine in vehicles with starter button

The system is equipped with a protective device against accidental switching off, the engine can only be shut off while driving in the event of an emergency.

› Keep the knob pressed » Fig. 150 *on page 117* - B or press it twice within 1 second.

After the emergency stop of the engine, the steering lock will remain unlocked.

! CAUTION

When the outdoor temperature is below -10 ° C, the selector lever when starting must always be in **P** mode.

Note

- The engine running noises may be louder at first for a short time after starting the cold engine.
- You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period, otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.
- After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan may intermittently continue to run for approx. 10 minutes (also continuously).

Problems with the engine start - vehicles with starter button

Fig. 151
Engine start - hold key on button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 116 first.

If no engine start is possible and the display of the instrument cluster shows a message that the key could not be detected by the system or there is a system fault, then try to start the engine as follows.

› Push the starter button and then hold the key with the back of it on the button » Fig. 151.

If the engine does not start, the help of a specialist garage is required.

CAUTION

The key may not be detected by the system if the battery in the key is running out of charge or the signal fails (strong electromagnetic field) or is shielded (e.g. in an aluminium case).

START-STOPsystem

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The START-STOPsystem (hereinafter referred to as the system) reduces CO_2emissions and harmful emissions, and saves fuel.

If the system determine that the engine is not needed when the vehicle stops or is at a standstill (e.g. at the traffic lights), it turns off the engine and starts it again when moving off.

The system function depends on many factors. Some of them are down to the driver, while others are systemic and can neither be influenced nor identified.

For this reason, the system may react differently in situations which seem identical from the driver's perspective.

The system is automatically activated **every** time the ignition is switched on (even when it has previously been manually deactivated with the A OFF button).

Note

If the engine has stopped due to the system, the ignition remains switched on.

Operation

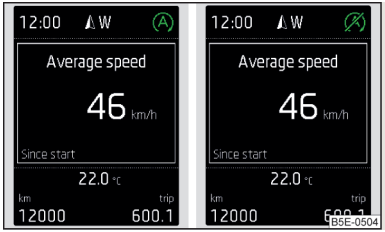

Fig. 152
Display

Vehicles with manual transmission

The engine is automatically **switched off** as soon as the vehicle comes to a halt, the shift lever is moved into neutral and the clutch pedal is released.

The engine is automatically **started** as soon as the clutch pedal is depressed. ▸

Vehicles with automatic transmission
The engine is automatically **switched off** as soon as the vehicle comes to a halt and the brake pedal is operated.

The engine is automatically **started** as soon as the accelerator pedal is depressed or the brake pedal is released (with deactivated Auto Hold function).

Requirements for the system to function correctly
The following conditions must be met for the system to function correctly.
- ✓ The driver's door is closed.
- ✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.
- ✓ The bonnet is closed.
- ✓ The driving speed was higher than 4 km/h after the last stop.

System status
The system status is shown in the display when the vehicle comes to a halt » Fig. 152.
- Ⓐ The engine is switched off automatically; when moving off, the ignition process will be initiated automatically.
- The engine is not switched off automatically.

When stopping, the engine will not switch off for the following reasons, among others.
- ▸ The engine temperature for the proper function of the system has not yet been reached.
- ▸ The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.
- ▸ The current consumption is too high.
- ▸ High air conditioning or heating output (high blower speed, big difference between the desired and actual interior temperature).

If the engine is shut down automatically and the system detects that the engine is required, such as when the brake pedal is pressed repeatedly, then the system automatically starts the engine.

More information about the current system status can be displayed on the Infotainment screen » *Owner´s Manual / Infotainment*.

If there is a **system fault**, the following message will appear in the display of the instrument cluster. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note
- ▪ If the driver's seat belt is removed for more than approx. 30 seconds or the driver's door is opened during automatic stop mode, the engine will have to be started manually.
- ▪ No automatic engine shut-down takes place when a vehicle with **automatic transmission** is moving at low speed (e.g. during a traffic jam) and remains stationary after pressing the brake pedal lightly. Automatic engine shut-down takes place if you press the brake pedal down with more force.
- ▪ For vehicles with **automatic transmission** there is no automatic engine shut-down when the system detects a manoeuvring action due to a large steering angle.

Manually deactivating/activating the system

Fig. 153
Button for the START-STOP system

› To **deactivate/activate**, press the button » Fig. 153.

When the system is deactivated, the symbol illuminates in the button.

If the system is deactivated, it will be reactivated automatically after the ignition has been switched off and on.

Note
If the system is deactivated when the engine is turned off automatically, then the automatic start process takes place.

Brakes and parking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The **wear** of the brake pads is dependent on the operating conditions and driving style. Under difficult conditions (e.g. urban, sporty driving style) the condition of the brakes should also be checked by a specialist garage between the service intervals.

The performance of the brakes can be delayed if the brakes are **damp, iced up in winter or if covered in a layer of salt**. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times » !.

Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the brake pads occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system. The brakes are cleaned by applying the brakes several times » !.

Before travelling a **long distance with a steep gradient**, reduce speed and shift into the next lowest gear. As a result, the braking effect of the engine will be used, reducing the load on the brakes. If you do have to brake, this should be carried out at intervals.

Emergency braking display - when an emergency braking is performed, the automatic flashing of the brake lights are used to alert the traffic behind.

New brake pads must first be "worn in" because these do not initially have the best possible braking effect. Drive especially carefully for the first 200 km or so.

A too low **brake fluid level** can cause **faults in the braking system**, the warning light (!) illuminates in the instrument cluster» page 33, (!) *Brake system*. If the warning light does not illuminate and an extended stopping distance is required, then driving should be adapted according to the unknown cause of fault and restricted braking effect - seek the assistance of a specialist garage immediately.

The **brake booster** increases the pressure generated with the brake pedal. The brake booster only operates when the engine is running.

WARNING

- Greater physical effort is required for braking when the engine is switched off – risk of accident!
- During the braking procedure on a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs, press the clutch pedal. Otherwise, the functionality of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!
- Do not press the brake pedal if braking is now required. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear - risk of accident!
- Braking for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs should be carried out only if the traffic conditions permit. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.
- Recommendations for new brake pads have to be observed.
- When stopping and parking, the parking brake should always be on, otherwise the vehicle could move off - there is the risk of an accident!
- If a front spoiler, full wheel trim, etc. is mounted retrospectively, it must be ensured that the air supply to the front wheel brakes is not reduced. Otherwise, the functionality of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!

Electric parking brake

Fig. 154
Parking brake button

Fig. 155 **Parking brake operation**

Read and observe ! on page 120 first.

The electric parking brake (hereinafter referred as a parking brake) replaces the handbrake. This secures the vehicle when stopping and parking against unwanted movement.

The parking brake can be used when the ignition is on or off.

Switching on

› Pull the Ⓟ button in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 155 and hold until the Ⓟ symbol in the button and warning light Ⓟ illuminate in the instrument cluster.

Automatic shut-off

The parking brake switches off automatically when starting, as long as the driver's door is closed and the driver has fastened the seat belt.

Should the vehicle start to roll away when starting on a downhill slope, step on the accelerator or switch on the parking brake.

Turning off the parking brake can be prevented if, before starting, the Ⓟ button is pulled and held in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 155. The parking brake turns off after releasing the button.

Manual shut-down

› With the **ignition switched on**, press the brake pedal and at the same time push the Ⓟ button in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 155.
› With the **engine running**, press either the brake or accelerator pedal and press the Ⓟ button in the direction of arrow 2.

The Ⓟ symbol in the button and the warning light Ⓟ in the instrument cluster go out.

Emergency braking function

If, while driving, a fault occurs in the brake system, the parking brake can be used as an emergency brake » !.

› Pull the Ⓟ button in the direction of arrow 1 and » Fig. 155 hold (you hear an audible signal), the vehicle starts to brake **strongly**.

The braking process is interrupted when the key is released or the accelerator pedal is actuated.

! WARNING

- The emergency brake is to be used only in an emergency when the vehicle cannot be stopped with the brake pedal.
- Do not place any objects in the recessed grip for the finger in front of the parking brake key - the parking brake button could be blocked!

i Note

- If the vehicle battery is discharged, it is not possible to release the parking brake. First connect the vehicle first to a power source, such as the battery of another vehicle » page 202, *Jump-starting* and then turn off the parking brake.
- Noise when switching on and off the parking brake is normal and therefore harmless.

Auto Hold function

Fig. 156
The Auto-Hold function button

Read and observe ! on page 120 first.

The Auto Hold function (hereinafter referred to only as system) prevents the vehicle from rolling unintentionally when stopped. It is, for example, not necessary to secure the vehicle with the brake pedal or parking brake at traffic lights.

For the activation, deactivation and correct functioning of the system, the following basic conditions are required.

✓ The driver's door is closed.
✓ The engine is running (or has been switched off automatically by the START-STOP system).
✓ On vehicles with automatic transmission the selector lever is **not** in mode **N** (in this mode, the system is not available).

Stopping and starting
When stopping the system prevents the vehicle from rolling away. The warning light Ⓟ illuminates in the instrument cluster. The brake pedal can be released.

The vehicle's brakes are released at the moment of stating off. The warning light Ⓟ in the instrument cluster goes out.

Should the vehicle start to roll away when starting on a downhill slope, step on the accelerator or switch on the parking brake.

If the vehicle is secured by the system and the driver's door is opened or the ignition is turned off, the vehicle is secured by the parking brake to prevent unwanted movement.

In this case, the indicator light turns off Ⓟ in the instrument cluster and the warning light Ⓟ illuminates.

Activation/deactivation
The system is activated/deactivated by means of the Ⓐ » Fig. 156 button.

When the system is activated, the symbol Ⓐ illuminates.

After switching off and switching on the ignition, the system remains either activated or deactivated depending on the last setting.

WARNING
The increased stopping and starting comfort brought by the system must not tempt you to take any safety risks.
- The system is not able to stop the vehicle under all circumstances, such as on icy or otherwise slippery ground, or on gradients.
- When stopping and parking always make sure that the vehicle is correctly secured » page 122, *Parking*.

CAUTION
In some washing systems it is necessary that the vehicle can roll freely. Therefore, the system must be deactivated before driving through a car wash.

Note
The system is able to secure the vehicle for about 10 minutes, after which the vehicle will be automatically secured by the parking brake.

Parking

Read and observe ! on page 120 first.

When stopping and parking, look for a place with a suitable surface » ! .

Only carry out the activities while parking in the specified order.

› Bring the vehicle to a stop and depress the brake pedal.
› The parking brake switch.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission** place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Switch off the engine.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, select **1st gear** or **reverse gear R**.
› Release the brake pedal.

If the parking brake is turned on while on a steep slope, the following message may be displayed in the instrument cluster. Search for a car park with less of an inclination.

WARNING
- The exhaust system components can become very hot. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel or such like. - Risk of fire and serious injury can occur!
- When leaving the vehicle, never leave people who could, for example, lock the vehicle or release the brake, unattended in the vehicle - risk of accident and injury!

Manual gear changing and pedals

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manual gear changing

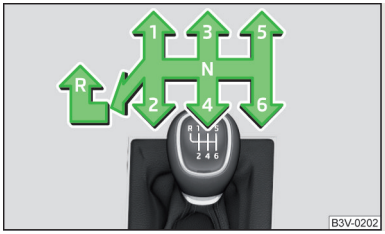

Fig. 157
The shift pattern

The gearshift pattern for the individual gear positions is shown on the gear lever » Fig. 157.

The gear shift indicator should be observed when changing gear » page 42.

Always depress the clutch pedal all the way down. This prevents uneven wear on the clutch.

Engage reverse gear
› Stop the vehicle.
› The clutch pedal is fully depressed.
› Switch the gear lever to **N**.
› Push the shift lever downwards fully to the left and then forward into **R**» Fig. 157.

The reversing lights will come on once reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

WARNING
Never engage reverse gear when driving – risk of accident!

CAUTION
If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gear shift lever while driving. The pressure from the hand can cause the gear shift mechanism to wear excessively.

Pedals

The operation of the pedals must not be hindered under any circumstances!

In the driver's footwell, only a footmat (supplied by the factory or from the ŠKODA Original Accessories) which is secured on the respective attachment points should be used.

WARNING
No objects should be located in the driver's footwell, otherwise the pedal operation could be disabled - risk of accident!

Automatic transmission

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The automatic transmission performs an automatic gear change irrespective of the engine load, the operation of the accelerator, the vehicle speed and the selected driving mode.

The modes of the automatic transmission can be adjusted by the driver by means of the selector lever.

WARNING
- Do not use the throttle if the forwards mode has been set using the selector lever prior to starting up - risk of accident!
- Never move the selector lever to mode **R** or **P** when driving – risk of accident!
- If the vehicle stalls, with engine running, in the **D**, **S**, **R** or Tiptronic mode, then the vehicle must be prevented from rolling away by means of the brake pedal, parking brake or using the Auto Hold function. Even when the engine is idling, the power transmission is never completely interrupted – the vehicle creeps.
- When leaving the vehicle, the selector lever must always be set to **P** . Otherwise, the vehicle could start to move - risk of accident.

CAUTION
If you want to move the selector lever from position **N** to position **D** / **S** whilst driving, the engine must be running at idling speed.

Select selector lever position

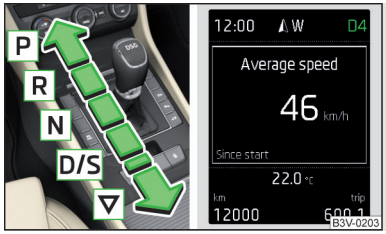

Fig. 158
Selector lever settings / display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 123 first.

Move the selector lever to change to the following positions » Fig. 158. In some positions you have to push the locking button » page 124, *Selector lever lock*.

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox mode and the currently selected gear are indicated in the display » Fig. 158.

P **Park** - the position can be set only when the vehicle is at a standstill. The drive wheels are mechanically locked.

R **Reverse gear** - the position can be set only when the vehicle is at a standstill and the engine is at idling speed.

N **Neutral (idle position)** - the power transmission to the drive wheels is interrupted.

D/S **Forward mode / sports programme** - the gear change takes place in the position **S at higher engine speeds** than in mode **D**

▽ (Sprung position) - choice between positions **D** and **S**

If the Sport driving mode is selected with the engine running » page 155, *Selection of the driving mode (Driving Mode Selection)* , the transmission is automatically set in the **S** mode.

E – Economical driving mode
If the driving mode Eco or Individual (engine - Eco) » page 155 is selected and the selection lever is in the setting **D/S**, the transmission is automatically set to mode **E**. This mode cannot be selected with the selector lever.

The forwards mode is switched up or down automatically in mode **E at lower engine speeds** than in mode **D**.

Selector lever lock

Fig. 159
Shift lock button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 123 first.

The selector lever is locked in mode **P** and **N** to prevent that the forward driving is selected accidentally, thereby setting the vehicle in motion.

The selector lever is locked only when the vehicle is stationary and at speeds up to 5 km/h.

The selector lever lock is indicated by the illumination of the warning light.

Releasing selector lever from mode P or N (selector lever lock)
› Press the brake pedal and the lock button at the same time in the direction of 1 » Fig. 159 .

To move the selector lever from mode **N** to **D / S** only the brake pedal is pressed.

The selector lever is not locked when quickly moving across the position **N** (e.g. from **R** to **D/S**). This, for example, helps to rock out a vehicle that is stuck, e.g. in a bank of snow. The selector lever lock will engage if the lever is in position **N** for more than approx. 2 seconds without the brake pedal being depressed.

If it is not possible to release the gear selector from mode **P** in the usual manner, then this can be emergency unlocked » page 208.

Note
If you want to switch the selector lever from mode **P** to mode **D/S** or vice versa, move the selector lever quickly. This prevents that you accidentally select mode **R** or **N**.

Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic)

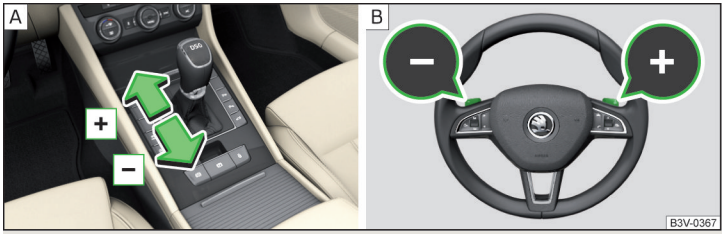

Fig. 160 **Selector lever/multi function steering wheel**

Read and observe and on page 123 first.

Tiptronic mode makes it possible to manually shift gears with the selector lever or multifunction steering wheel.

Switching to manual shifting using the selector lever

› Push the gear selector from position **D/S** towards the right, or left in a right-hand drive vehicle. The current gear is maintained.

Changing gear

› To **shift up**, tap the selector lever forwards + or pull the rocker switch ⊕ briefly towards the steering wheel » Fig. 160.
› To **shift down**, tap the selector lever backwards - or pull the rocker switch ⊖ briefly towards the steering wheel » Fig. 160.

Switching to manual shifting by using the rocker switches under the multifunction steering wheel

› To **change gear**, pull one of the rocker switches ⊖/⊕ briefly towards the steering wheel » Fig. 160.
› To **cancel** manual shift, pull the rocker switch ⊕ towards the steering wheel for more than 1 s.

If you do not pull one of the rocker switches ⊖/⊕ for more than 1 minute, manual shifting of the gears is deactivated automatically.

The currently selected gear is indicated in the display » Fig. 158 *on page 124*.

The gear shift indicator should be observed when changing gear » page 42.

When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up into the higher gear just before the maximum permissible engine speed is reached. If a lower gear is selected, the gearbox does not shift down until there is no risk of the engine over revving.

Note

It may be beneficial, for example, when travelling downhill, to use manual shifting of gears. Shifting to a lower gear reduces the load on the brakes and hence the wear of the brakes.

Starting-off and driving

Read and observe and on page 123 first.

Starting and temporarily pausing

› Firmly depress and hold the brake pedal.
› Start the engine.
› Press the locking button and move the selector lever to the desired position » page 124.
› Release the brake pedal and accelerate.

The selector lever position **N** does not have to be selected if stopping for a short time, such as at cross roads. However, you must apply the brake pedal in order to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Accelerating at maximum speed during the journey (kickdown function)

The kickdown function is applied when the accelerator pedal is pressed down in the forward mode.

The gear change is adjusted accordingly to reach the maximum acceleration.

Starting at maximum speed (launch control function)[1)]

The launch control function is available in mode **S** or Tiptronic.

› Disable the TCS » page 129, *Braking and stabilisation systems*.
› START STOP deactivate » page 119, *Manually deactivating/activating the system*.
› Fully depress and hold the brake pedal with your left foot.
› Fully depress the accelerator pedal with your right foot.
› Release the brake pedal - the vehicle is running at maximum acceleration.

[1)] This function is only valid for some engines.

Driving in neutral ("coasting")
When releasing the accelerator pedal, the vehicle moves without the braking effect of the engine.

Operating conditions
- The selector lever is in the **D/S** position.
- Driving mode Eco or Individual (Drive - Eco) is selected» page 155, *Selection of the driving mode (Driving Mode Selection)*.
- The vehicle is travelling at more than 20 km/h.
- No trailer or other accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

The gear is selected again automatically, when you depress the accelerator or brake pedal or pull the left rocker switch - towards the steering wheel » page 125, *Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic)*.

WARNING
Rapid acceleration, particularly on slippery roads, can lead to loss of control of the vehicle – risk of accident!

Running in the engine and economical driving

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Running in the engine

During the first 1,500 km, the driving manner determines the quality of the running in process on a new engine.

During the first 1,000 km, the engine should not be charged with more than 3/4 of the maximum permitted engine revs and without the trailer.

In the area of **1,000 to 1,500 kilometres**, the engine load can be increased up to the maximum permitted engine speed.

Tips for economical driving

The fuel consumption depends on the driving style, road condition, weather conditions and the like.

For an economical driving style, the following instructions must be observed.
- Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
- Observe the recommended gear » page 42.
- Avoid full throttle and high speeds.
- Reduce idling.
- Avoid short distances.
- Ensure the correct tyre inflation pressure is maintained» page 192.
- Avoid unnecessary ballast.
- Remove the roof rack when it is not needed.
- Only switch on electrical consumers (e.g. seat heating) for as long as they are needed. In Infotainment, the display is shown of up to three consumers which are currently showing the highest degree of fuel consumption » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - Vehicle settings*.
- Before switching on, ventilate the cooling system briefly and do not use the cooling system with open windows.
- Do not leave windows open at high speed.

DriveGreen function

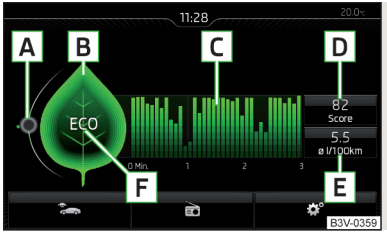

Fig. 161
Shown in the infotainment display

The DriveGreen function (hereinafter referred to as DriveGreen) evaluates the driving efficiency based on the information respecting the driving style.

DriveGreen can be displayed on the Infotainment as follows.

› Press the CAR button in Infotainment and then tap on the → **Drive Green** function surfaces in the display.

A driving liquid display
With the driving is fluid, the display is located in the middle (near the green dot). When accelerating, the display moves down, and upwards when braking.

B "Green leaf"
The greener the leaf, the more economic the driving style. With less economical driving, the leaf is presented without any green colouring or it can be completely hidden.

C bar graph
The higher the green bars, the more economical the driving style. Each bar shows the driving efficiency in 5-second steps, the current bar is on the left.

D scoring (0 - 100)
The higher the indicated value, the more economical the driving style. When you tap the function surface D, a detailed assessment showing the driving efficiency during the last 30 minutes is displayed.

If the trip lasts less than 30 minutes from the start, then the overview will add the assessment from the previous journey (the bars are shown in dark green).

E the average fuel consumption from the start
When you tap the E function surface, a detailed overview of the average fuel consumption during the last 30 minutes is shown.

If the trip lasts less than 30 minutes from the start, then the overview will add the overview of the average fuel consumption from the previous journey (the bars are shown in dark green).

F symbols
The display may show the following four symbols, which give information on the current driving style.

ECO Economical driving style

The current speed has a negative effect on fuel consumption.

If the driving is not fluid, drive with anticipation

3▸4 Recommended gear

Tips for economical driving
Tap on the B leave to display tips for economical driving.

Note
Resetting the single-trip memory "from start" also resets the average consumption E and the driving assessment D.

Radiator shutters

The radiator shutters located in front of the radiator (hereinafter: shutter) help to reduce CO_2 emissions as well as harmful emissions and to save fuel.

If the system detects that it is possible to reduce the amount of air flowing to the radiator, it closes the blinds. As a result, the air pressure is reduced in the front of the vehicle.

If, due to a **function impairment** of the shutters, a driving speed of 150 km/h is reached, an appropriate message is shown in the display of the instrument cluster.

After the display of the above message, the top speed of the vehicle is automatically limited to around 170 km/h.

If this message appears in the winter, the cause may be ice or snow caught up in the blinds. After the ice or snow has thawed, the blinds are functional again.

If the impairment not due to ice or snow, then assistance from a specialist should be sought.

Avoiding damage to your vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Driving Tips

Only drive on such roads and in such terrain that match the vehicle parameters » page 218, *Technical data* as well as your driving skills.

The driver is always responsible for deciding whether the vehicle can handle travelling in the given terrain.

WARNING
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. Too high a speed or an erroneous manoeuvre may cause serious injury and damage to the vehicle.
- Combustible objects such as dry leaves or twigs caught under the base of the vehicle could ignite on hot vehicle parts - risk of fire!

CAUTION

- Pay attention to the ground clearance of the vehicle! When driving over objects which are larger than the ground clearance, the vehicle can get damaged.
- Any objects that get trapped under the vehicle floor must be removed as soon as possible. These items can cause damage to the vehicle (e.g. on parts of the fuel system or the brake system).

Driving through water

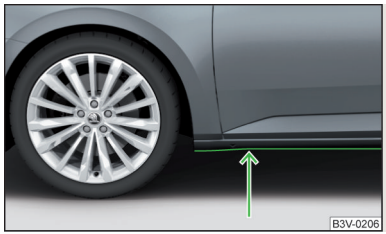

Fig. 162
Maximum permissible water level when driving through water

The following must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle when driving through bodies of water (e.g. flooded roads).

› Therefore determine the depth of the water before driving through bodies of water. The water level must not reach above the lower edge of the lower brace » Fig. 162.
› Drive at a maximum speed of walking pace, otherwise a shaft may form in front of the vehicle which could enable water to enter the vehicle system (e.g. in the air induction system of the engine).
› Never stop in the water, do not reverse and do not switch the engine off.

CAUTION

- Water entering the vehicle systems (e.g. the air induction system of the engine) can cause serious damage to the vehicle!
- Oncoming vehicles can generate water waves which can exceed the permissible water level for your vehicle.
- Do not drive through salt water, as the salt can cause corrosion. An vehicle coming into contact with salt water is to be thoroughly rinsed with fresh water.

Assist systems

General information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- The assistance systems only serve to support the driver and do not relieve the driver of the responsibility for driving the vehicle.
- The increased safety provision, as well as the increased occupant protection provided by the assistance systems must not tempt you to take risks - risk of accident!
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The assistance systems have physical and system-related limitations. For this reason, the driver may experience some undesired or delayed system responses in certain situations. You should therefore always be alert and ready to intervene!
- Only enable, disable or set the assistance systems when you have the car fully under control, in every traffic situation - risk of accident!

Radar sensor

Fig. 163
Installation location of the radar sensor

Read and observe ! on page 128 first.

The radar sensor (hereinafter referred to only sensor) uses electromagnetic waves to capture the traffic situation ahead of the vehicle. The radar is located under a cover » Fig. 163.

The sensor is part of the ACC » page 148 and Front Assist » page 153systems.

The sensor function may be impaired in the event of one of the following situations arising.
- The sensor cover is soiled (e.g. with mud, snow and the like).
- The area in front of and around the sensor cover is obscured (e.g. by labels, auxiliary headlights and the like(.
- When visibility is poor (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
- In exceptional cases, the sensor may be covered in the area beneath the cover, e.g. due to snow.

If the sensor cover or the sensor is dirty or covered, a message to that effect from the ACC system » page 152, *Malfunctions* or Front Assist » page 155, *Malfunctions* system appears in the instrument cluster display.

WARNING

- If you suspect that the sensor is damaged, deactivate the ACC system and Front Assist system» page 150, » page 154. Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- A collision or damage in the front or lower area of the vehicle could affect the sensor function - there is risk of accident! Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- Do not cover the area in front of and around the sensor cover. This can lead to impaired function of the sensor - risk of accident!

CAUTION

Remove snow with a brush and ice with a solvent-free de-icer from the sensor cover.

Braking and stabilisation systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The brake and stabilization systems are automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on, unless otherwise indicated.

The error display is in Chapter » page 31, *Warning lights*.

WARNING

The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 128, in section *Introduction*.

Stabilisation control (ESC)

Fig. 164
Press the ESC system

Read and observe on page 129 first.

ESC improves vehicle stability in critical driving situations (e.g. if the vehicle starts to skid) by the braking the individual wheels to maintain the desired direction.

During an ECS intervention, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

ESC Sport allows for a sportier driving style. With a slight over or under steering of the vehicle no ESC interventions will take place and the TCS is restricted so that it´s possible for the wheels of the driven axle to spin.

The **activation/deactivation** of the ESC Sport can take place as follows.
- By **holding** the button to **activate** / by **pressing** the button to **deactivate** » Fig. 164.
- Infotainment » *Owner's Manual - Infotainment*.

With **activation** the warning light lights up in the instrument cluster and an appropriate message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

With **deactivation** the warning light **extinguishes** in the instrument cluster and an appropriate message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

Read and observe ! on page 129 first.

ABS prevents the wheels locking when braking. Thus helping the driver to maintain control of the vehicle.

The intervention of the ABS is noticeable from the **pulsating movements of the brake pedal** which is accompanied by noises.

When the ABS system is active, do not brake periodically or reduce the pressure on the brake pedal.

Engine drag torque control (MSR)

Read and observe ! on page 129 first.

The MSR prevents the blocking tendency of the drive wheels when shifting down or with an abrupt deceleration (e.g. on icy or otherwise slippery road surfaces).

If the drive wheels lock, the engine speed is automatically increased. This reduces the braking effect of the engine, and the wheels can rotate freely again.

Traction control (TCS)

Read and observe ! on page 129 first.

TCS prevents the spinning of the wheels of the driven axle. TCS reduces the drive power transmitted to the wheels in the case of slipping wheels. Thus, for example, driving on road surfaces with low grip is made easier.

During a TCS intervention, the indicator light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The **deactivation/activation** of TCS can be carried out, depending on equipment, in one of the following ways.
- Infotainment » *Owner's Manual - Infotainment*
- By pressing the » Fig. 164 *on page 129* button.

With **deactivation** the warning light **lights up** in the instrument cluster **and** an appropriate message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

With **activation** the warning light is **extinguished** and an appropriate message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

The TCS should normally always be enabled. The system should be deactivated only in the following situations, for example.
- When driving with snow chains.
- When driving in deep snow or on a very loose surface.
- When it is necessary to "rock" a car free when it has become stuck.

Electronic differential lock (EDL and XDS)

Read and observe ! on page 129 first.

EDL prevents the turning of the respective wheel of the driven axle. EDL brakes the spinning wheel, if necessary, and transmits the driving force to the other driving wheel. Driving becomes easier on road surfaces with different traction under each wheel of the driven axle.

EDL switches off automatically to avoid excessive heat generation on the brake of the wheel being braked. Once the brakes have cooled down, there is an automatic re-activation of EDL.

XDS is an extension to the electronic differential lock (EDL). XDS does not respond to the relieved inner curve wheel of the driven axle in the case of fast cornering.

By applying braking force to the relieved wheel, spinning is prevented by the XDS. This has a positive effect on the driving stability and steerability of the vehicle.

Driver Steering Recommendation (DSR)

Read and observe ! on page 129 first.

In critical situations, the DSR provides the driver with a steering recommendation in order to stabilise the vehicle. DSR is activated, for example, on the right and left vehicle side when braking sharply on different road surfaces.

Brake Assist (HBA)

Read and observe ! on page 129 first.

The HBA increases the braking effect and helps to reduce the braking distance.

The HBA is activated by very quick operation of the brake pedal. In order to achieve the shortest possible braking distance, the brake pedal must be applied firmly until the vehicle has come to a standstill.

The HBA function is automatically deactivated when the brake pedal is released.

Hill Start Assist (HHC)

Read and observe ! on page 129 first.

When driving on slopes, HHC allows you to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal without the vehicle rolling downhill on its own.

The vehicle is braked by the system for a further 2 seconds or so after releasing the brake pedal.

The HHC is active from a 5% slope if the driver's door is closed. HHC is only ever active on slopes when in forward or reverse start off.

Multi collision brake (MCB)

Read and observe ! on page 129 first.

MCB helps to decrease speed after a collision by means of automatic braking interventions and to stabilise the vehicle. This reduces the risk of a subsequent crash due to uncontrolled vehicle movement.

The automatic brake interventions can take place only if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ There was a front, side and rear-end collision of a certain severity.
- ✓ The impact speed was greater than approx. 10 km/h.
- ✓ The brakes, the ESL and other required electrical systems remain functional after impact.
- ✓ The accelerator pedal is not actuated.

Trailer stabilization system (TSA)

Read and observe ! on page 129 first.

The TSA helps the combination stable in situations where the trailer sways and then the whole trailer combination.

TSA brakes the individual wheels of the towing vehicle in order to damp the rocking motion of the entire vehicle combination.

The following conditions are required for the correct TSA function.

- ✓ The trailer was shipped from the factory or purchased from the ŠKODA genuine accessories.
- ✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle via the trailer socket.
- ✓ The parking aid is activated.
- ✓ The speed is greater than 60 km/h.

Further information » page 165, *Towing device and trailer*.

Parking aid (ParkPilot)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The parking aid (hereinafter referred to as system) uses acoustic signals or the Infotainment display when manoeuvring around obstacles in the vicinity of the vehicle.

! WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 128, ! in section *Introduction*.
- Moving persons or objects may not be recognized by the system sensors.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the system signals. There is a danger that such objects or people may not be recognised by the system sensors.

WARNING (Continued)

- External noise sources may affect the signals of the system sensors. There is a danger that obstacles may not be detected by the system sensors.
- Before reversing, you should satisfy yourself that there are no small obstacle, such as a rock, thin post etc., in front or behind your vehicle. Such obstacles may not be recognised by the system sensors.

CAUTION

- Keep the system sensors » Fig. 165 *on page 132* clean, snow-and ice-free and do not cover with any objects of any kind, otherwise the system functioning may be impaired.
- Under adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures, etc.), the system function may be limited - "incorrect recognition of obstacle".
- Accessories fitted to the vehicle rear, such as bicycle carriers, can impair the system function.

Function

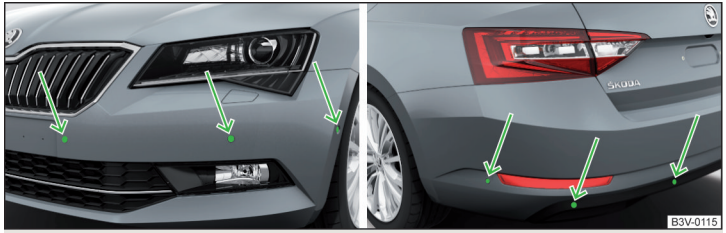

Fig. 165 **Installation location of the sensors on the left side of the vehicle: front / rear**

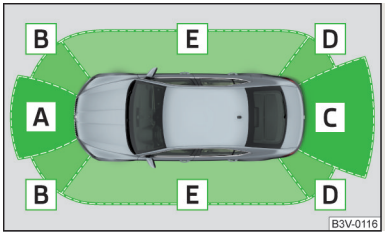

Fig. 166
Sampled areas and range of the sensors

Read and observe and on page 131 first.

The system uses ultrasound waves to calculate the distance between the bumper and an obstacle. The ultrasonic sensors are, depending on vehicle equipment, located in the back or in the front bumper » Fig. 165.

Depending on the equipment, the following system variants are possible » Fig. 166.

- Variant 1: warns of obstacles in the areas C, D.
- Variant 2: warns of obstacles in the areas A, B, C, D.
- Variant 3: warns of obstacles in the areas A, B, C, D, E.

Approximate range of sensors (in cm)

Area » Fig. 166	Variant 1 (4 sensors)	Version 2 (8 sensors)	Variant 3 (12 sensors)
A	-	120	120
B	-	60	90
C	160	160	160
D	60	60	90
E	-	-	90

Audible signals

The interval between the acoustic signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced. A continuous tone sounds from a distance of approx. 30 cm - danger area. **Stop driving in the direction of the obstacle!**

The acoustic signals can be set in Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.

Towing a trailer

When towing, or when another accessory is connected to the trailer socket only the areas A and B » Fig. 166 are active in the system.

Note

- If with **Version 3** vehicles not all fields around the vehicle are active after activation the vehicle should be moved forwards or backwards.
- The signal tones for front obstacle recognition are factory-set to be higher than for rear obstacle recognition.
- The setting of the acoustic signals is stored (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 46.

Display in the Infotainment display

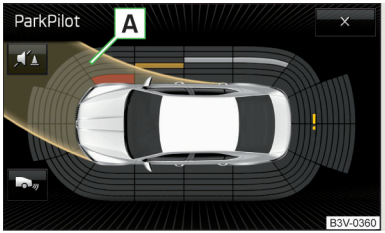

Fig. 167
Display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 131 first.

Function surfaces and warnings » Fig. 167

A	Road display.
✕ / ⮌	Depending on the Infotainment type: Switching off park assistant display.
/	Switching audible parking signals on/off.
	Change to rear-view camera display .
	There is an obstacle in the collision area (the distance to the obstacle is less than 30 cm). STOP Stop driving in the direction of an obstacle!
	There is an obstacle in the road (the distance to the obstacle is greater than 30 cm).
	An obstacle is located outside of the road (the distance to the obstacle is greater than 30 cm).
!	System failure (there is no indication of obstacles).

Road display
The road display A » Fig. 167 indicates the road on which the vehicle would take the current steering wheel and shift / selector lever position.

The shift lever is in the neutral position and the gear selector is in mode **N**. the road display is at the front.

Activation / deactivation

Fig. 168
System key (option 2, 3)

Read and observe ! and ! on page 131 first.

Activation
The activation of the system is initiated when the reverse gear is engaged, or, with vehicles with the **variant 2 and 3** , also by pressing the P » Fig. 168 button.

When activating, an alarm sounds and the symbol P illuminates in the button.

Deactivation
On vehicles with **Version 1**, the system can be deactivated by moving out of reverse gear.

For vehicles with **version 2 and 3**, the system is automatically deactivated by pressing the P button or at a speed above 15 km/h (the P symbol in the button goes out).

Fault display
Vehicles with **Variant 1**

- After system activation an acoustic signal sounds for about 3 seconds (there is no obstacle near the vehicle).

Vehicles with the **Variants 2 and 3**

- After system activation, the symbol P in the button flashes.
- In the display of the instrument cluster a message about an error of the ParkPilot system appears (at the same time there is an audible signal).

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note

The system can only be activated with the P button at a speed of below 15 km/h.

Automatic system activation when moving forward

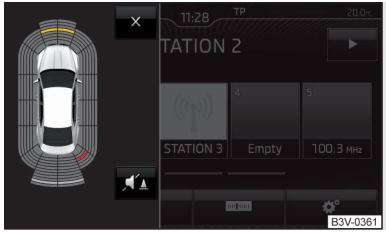

Fig. 169
Infotainment display: Display with automatic activation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 131 first.

The automatic system activation occurs when moving forward at a speed below 10 km/h when the vehicle approaches an obstacle.

After activation, the following is shown in the left pane of the Infotainment display » Fig. 169.

Acoustic signals are sounded as of a distance from the obstacle of around 50 cm.

The automatic display can be activated / deactivated in Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.

Note

The setting (activate / deactivate) of the automatic display is stored (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 46.

Rear Traffic Alert and Wizard for "Blind spot" Monitoring

Introduction

Fig. 170
Installation location of the radar sensors

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The Rear Traffic Alert and Wizard for "blind spot" monitoring works based on the information from the radar sensors in the rear bumper » Fig. 170. The radar sensors are not visible from the outside.

Rear Traffic Alert

The Rear Traffic Alert (hereinafter referred to as system) warns when leaving a parking space from a transverse parking space about any approaching vehicles.

If necessary, the system tries to avoid a collision with automatic braking, or at least to mitigate the consequences.

Wizard for "blind spot"monitoring

The wizard for"blind spot monitoring" (hereafter referred to as system) draws attention to vehicles travelling in the same direction in the next lane in the so-called blind spots.

The "blind spot" is an area that is not easily visible in a rear-view mirror or even directly from the vehicle.

WARNING

The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 128, in section *Introduction*.

WARNING

- In the case of a collision or damage to the rear of the vehicle, the function of the systems may be affected - risk of accident! Have the vehicle checked by a specialist garage.
- Do not cover the sensor area - the function of the systems could be limited.
  - Remove snow, ice and such obstacles from the sensor environment immediately.

WARNING

The wizard for "blind spot"monitoring is limited by physical and system-related limits. Therefore, in the following situations the system can be delayed in drawing attention (or not at all) to a vehicle in the next land.

- When a vehicle is approaching at a very high speed.
- When passing through a very sharp curve or a roundabout.

CAUTION

- If a trailer or other accessory is to be connected to the trailer socket, then the two systems are not available.
- In adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures, etc.), the system function may be limited - "failure to recognise a vehicle".
- Accessories additionally installed on the vehicle rear, such as bicycle carriers, can impair the system function.

Rear Traffic Alert function

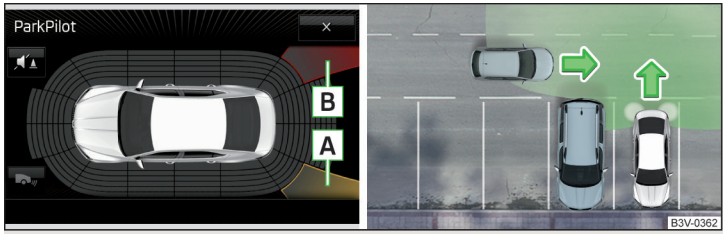

Fig. 171 **Infotainment display: warning display / driving situation**

Read and observe and on page 135 first.

With the ignition switched on, the area next to and behind the vehicle is monitored by the radar sensors of the system. If an approaching vehicle is detected from the rear of the vehicle » Fig. 171, the system warns of this fact.

Warning - vehicles with parking aid

You will hear a continuous tone and one of the following warning levels » Fig. 171 appears in the Infotainment display.

A An oncoming vehicle is detected. Do not continue driving backwards and check around the vehicle.

B A vehicle in the collision region is detected. Do not continue driving backwards .

Warning - vehicles without parking sensors

An acoustic signal is sounded and information for the driver to observe the traffic behind is shown in the instrument cluster.

Automatic emergency braking

If the driver does not react to the warning and the system detects an impending collision, then this can trigger an automatic braking at a speed up to 10 km/h. A corresponding message is shown in the information cluster display.

Wizard for “Blind spot”Monitoring - Function

Read and observe ! and ! on page 135 first.

At a speed over 15 km/h, the area alongside and behind the vehicle is monitored by the system. At the same time, the distance and the difference in speed between your vehicle and the other vehicles in the monitored area can be measured.

When driving, the sensors monitor an area to the left and right to the extent of a normal lane width.

If a vehicle is detected in the “blind spot” area, the system indicates this vehicle by the indicator light in the exterior mirror.

System constraint
The system is unable to recognise the specific lane width by means of sensors. Therefore this can e.g. in the following cases respond to a vehicle in a further lane.
- When driving on a road with narrow lanes or on the lane edge.
- Driving around a bend.

The system may also respond to objects on the roadside such as crash barriers, noise barriers or similar objects.

Wizard for “Blind Spot”Monitoring driving situations and warnings

Fig. 172 **Driving situation / indicator light in the left outside mirror indicates the driving situation**

Fig. 173 **Driving situation / indicator light in the right outside mirror indicates the driving situation**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 135 first.

In the following situations, the indicator light in the outside mirror indicates a vehicle in the “blind spot”.
- You vehicle B is being overtaken by vehicle A» Fig. 172.
- Your vehicle C overtakes the vehicle D at a greater speed of max. 10 km» Fig. 173. If the speed during the overtaking is even higher, then there is no warning by the warning light.

The warning display is always in the exterior mirror on the side of the vehicle where a vehicle is detected in the “blind spot”.

The greater the speed difference between the two vehicles, the earlier the warning (by means of the warning light) regarding the vehicle that is overtaking you takes place.

Two warning levels
light up - a vehicle has been detected in the “blind spot”.

flash - a vehicle has been detected in the “blind spot” and **the turn signal is switched on**.

An advanced warning for vehicles with Lane Assist
flash also if **the steering wheel** is turned in the direction of the vehicle in the “blind spot” . Therefore the Lane Assist » page 158 must be enabled and the boundary line between the vehicles detected.

If in this case your vehicle indicates crossing the boundary line, with a short vibration of the steering wheel.

Note

The brightness of the indicator light is dependent on the setting of the vehicle lighting. With the low or high beam on the brightness of the light will be lower.

Activation / deactivation

Read and observe and on page 135 first.

The activation or deactivation of the system can be carried out in one of the following ways.

- In the instrument cluster display » page 45, *Menu item* **Assist systems**.
- Infotainment » *Owner's Manual - Infotainment*

After switching off and switching on the ignition, depending on the setting prior to switching off the ignition, the systems remains activated / deactivated.

Note

When activating the wizard for "blind spot" monitoring, the warning lights illuminate briefly in the two exterior mirrors.

Malfunctions

Read and observe and on page 135 first.

If the systems are not available for some unknown reason, an appropriate message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Sensor covered / dirty

If the sensor is dirty or covered, a message indicating that there is no sensor view appears. Clean or remove the obstructing object from the sensor environment » Fig. 170 *on page 134*.

Systems unavailable

If the systems are currently unavailable, a message regarding the unavailability appears. Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again. If the systems are still not available, seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

System fault

In the case of a system fault, an error message appears. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Reversing camera

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The rear view camera (following as system) helps the driver when parking and manoeuvring by displaying the area behind the vehicle in the Infotainment display (following as display).

There are four modes available for different situations during the park and manoeuvring action. The mode change is carried out by means of the function surfaces on the display » page 138.

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 128, in section *Introduction*.
- The system detects obstacles. The display of the auxiliary boxes and lines is independent of the actual vehicle environment. The driver must judge for themselves whether the vehicle can park safely in the selected parking space.
- The camera may not be soiled or obscured, otherwise the system function will be significantly affected - there is a risk of accident. For information on cleaning » page 176, *Caring for the outside of the vehicle*.

CAUTION

- The camera image is distorted by contrast with eyesight. The display is therefore only of limited use for estimating distances to following vehicles.
- Some items, such as thin columns, chain link fences or lattice, may not be represented adequately in terms of display resolution.
- In a crash or damage the vehicle's rear camera can possibly deviate from the correct position. If this is the case, have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.

Note

The camera is equipped with a cleaning system » page 74. The spraying is carried out automatically when the rear window is sprayed.

Operation

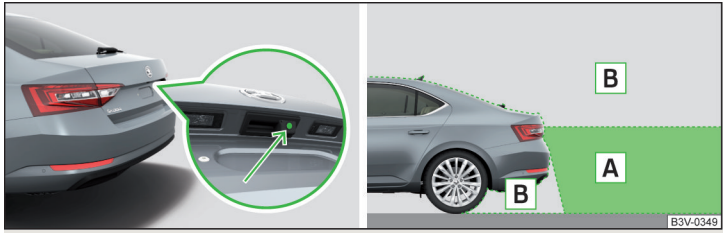

Fig. 174 **Installation location of the camera / scanned area behind the vehicle**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 137 first.

The camera for capturing the area behind the vehicle is in the grip of the boot lid » Fig. 174.

Area behind the vehicle » Fig. 174

A Detection range of the camera

B Area outside the detection range of the camera

The system can assist the driver when parking and manoeuvring under the following basic conditions.

- ✓ The ignition is switched on.
- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ The luggage compartment lid is completely closed.
- ✓ The vehicle is travelling at less than 15 km/h.
- ✓ The area behind the vehicle is clearly visible.
- ✓ The selected parking / manoeuvring area is clear and even.

Activation / deactivation

Fig. 175 **Button for activation / deactivation**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 137 first.

Activation

The system is activated by selecting reverse gear or pressing the symbol button» Fig. 175.

When activating, an alarm sounds and the symbol illuminates in the button.

The display mode for the traverse parking is displayed.

Deactivation

The system is deactivated by pressing the button, switching off the ignition or when the speed exceeds 15 km/h (the symbol in the button then goes out).

Function surfaces

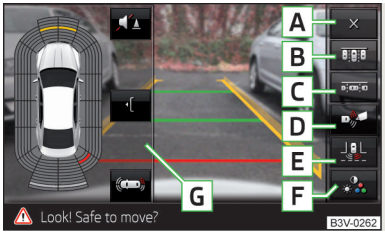

Fig. 176 **Function surfaces**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 137 first.

It is possible to adjust the parking and manoeuvring mode by means of the function surfaces.

Function surfaces » Fig. 176

A Turns off the display of the area behind the vehicle
B Mode - traverse parking
C Mode - parallel parking
D Mode - driving up to a trailer / distance monitoring
E Mode - monitor the area behind the vehicle (wide view)
F Display settings - brightness, contrast, colour
G Parking aid (mini display)
Enabling/disabling the audible signals
Enabling/disabling the mini display
Switch to full screen display

Guidelines and roadway

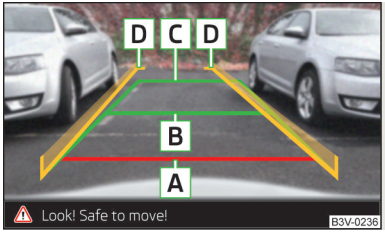

Fig. 177
Orientation and lane lines

Read and observe and on page 137 first.

In the mode for transverse and parallel parking guidance for the assessment of distance and lane lines are displayed.

Display » Fig. 177

A The distance is about 40 cm (safety distance limit).
B The distance is about 100 cm.
C The distance is about 200 cm.
D The lane lines terminate approximately 300 cm behind the vehicle.

The distance may vary slightly depending on the load of the vehicle and the road inclination.

The distance between the side lines corresponds approximately to the vehicle width including mirrors.

Lane
The lane lines D » Fig. 177 change depending on the steering angle and indicate the roadway on which the vehicle would take with the current steering wheel position.

CAUTION
The objects shown in the display can be closer or even further away than they appear. This is especially the case in the following situations.
- Protruding objects, such as the rear of a truck and the like.
- When driving from a horizontal surface into a slope or a depression.
- When driving from a slope or a depression onto a horizontal surface.

Mode - traverse parking

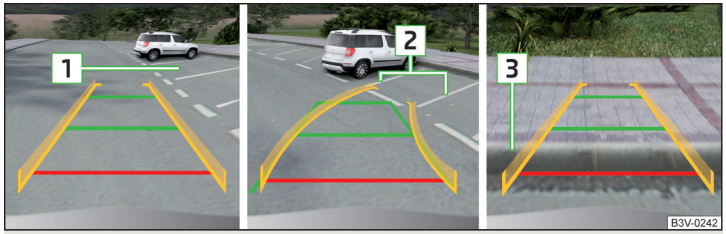

Fig. 178 **Display**

Read and observe and on page 137 first.

This mode supports the driver when reverse parking in a parking space that is transverse to the road.

Parking manoeuvre
› Select a suitable parking space.
› Press the button » Fig. 175 *on page 138*.
› At the selected parking space 1 » Fig. 178 slowly drive past and stop the vehicle.
› Engage reverse gear.
› Adjust the steering wheel so that the lane lines lead into the parking space 2.
› Carefully move backward and steer so that the yellow lines are still leading into the parking space.

› At the latest when the red line of the back of the parking space (for example, curb) 3 is touched, stop the vehicle.

Mode - parallel parking

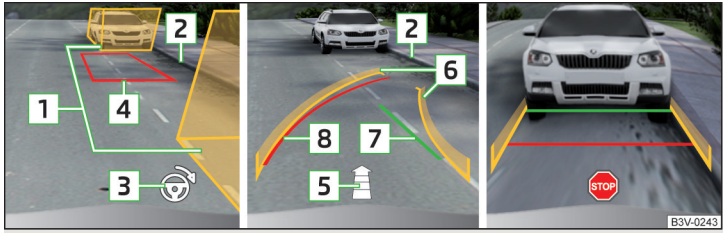

Fig. 179 **Display**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 137 first.

This mode supports the driver when reverse parking in a parking space that is parallel to the road.

Parking manoeuvre

› When driving past a parking space push the button P» Fig. 175 *on page 138*.
› Tap the function surface C » Fig. 176 *on page 138*.

The display shows auxiliary boxes for both road sides.

› Switch on the indicator for the side on which you want to park.

The auxiliary boxes for the opposite side will be hidden.

› Stop the vehicle stop so that there are no obstructions in the gap between the auxiliary boxes 1 » Fig. 179 and the rear box does not extend over the side of the parking space 2 (e.g. kerb).
› Turn the steering wheel in the direction recommended 3 until the colour of the trapezoidal frame 4 is green. Hold the steering wheel in this position.
› Once the arrow 5 appears in the display, reverse (when reversing in the parking space the arrow will get shorter).

The display shows the yellow lane lines 6 and the green line 7.

If the steering angle is corrected while reversing then the red line 8 appears (required roadway alignment).

› In this case, adjust the steering wheel so that the yellow lines 6 the red line 8 fade into each other.
› Carefully reverse until STOP appears in the display or the green line 7 is congruent with the lateral boundary of the parking space (e.g. kerb) 2.
› Stop the vehicle and steer opposite until the yellow lines 6 the red line 8 fade into each other (required roadway alignment). Hold the steering wheel in this position.

Orientation lines are displayed » Fig. 177 *on page 139* in the display.

› Carefully move backwards.
› Stop the vehicle when STOP appears in the display, or at a safe distance from the obstacle situated behind the vehicle.

Note

The guidance in the parking space is cancelled due to the system when the steering wheel is set for a period of time against the required road direction. The parking is to be started again.

Mode - driving up to a trailer / distance monitoring

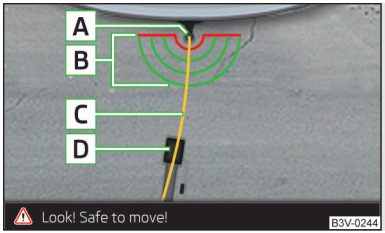

Fig. 180
Display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 137 first.

In this mode, the area behind the vehicle is shown at the top of the display.

Vehicles with towing hitch

If your vehicle is factory fitted with a tow-bar, this mode supports the driver when the vehicle approaches a trailer draw bar.

Display » Fig. 180

A Ball head of the towing device
B Lines for the distance estimation (at a distance of about 10 cm)

C Line for approaching a trailer draw bar
D Trailer draw bar

The line C moves depending on the steering angle and indicate the roadway on which the vehicle would take with the current steering wheel position.

Vehicles without towing hitch
If your vehicle is not factory equipped with a towing hitch, a red line for monitoring the distance to obstacles is displayed at a distance of 40 cm behind the vehicle.

Mode - monitor the area behind the vehicle

Read and observe ! and ! on page 137 first.

In this mode, the area behind the vehicle is shown in the display.

The mode is suited for the entire view of the situation behind the vehicle.

Park Assist

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Park Assist (following referred to system) helps drivers park in suitable parallel and perpendicular parking places or also to manoeuvre out of parallel parking spaces.

The system takes over the steering movements **only** when parking or leaving a parking space. The driver operates the brake, accelerator or clutch pedal and the shift / selector lever.

The state in which the steering wheel is operated by the system, is referred to as **parking operation.**

The Park Assist is an extension of the parking aid » page 131 and operates on the basis of data collected by the ultrasonic sensors.

For this reason, the chapter on the parking aid is to be read carefully and the safety notes are to be observed.

! WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 128, ! in section *Introduction*.
- During the parking process, the system automatically performs rapid steering movements. While it is doing so, do not place your hands between the steering wheel – risk of injury!
- During a parking manoeuvre on loose or slippery surfaces (gravel, snow, ice, etc.) you may stray from the calculated road. It is therefore recommended that you do not use the system in such situations.

! CAUTION

The correct evaluation of the parking space and the parking procedure depends on the circumference of the wheels on the vehicle.
- The system only works correctly if the vehicle is fitted with the wheel size approved by ŠKODA AUTO.
- Abstain from using the system when the vehicle is fitted with snow chains or a temporary spare wheel.
- If wheels other than those approved by ŠKODA AUTO are fitted, the resulting position of the vehicle in the parking space can differ slightly. This can be avoided by readjusting the system at a specialist garage.

! CAUTION

If other vehicles are parked behind or on the curb, the system can drive your vehicle over the kerb or up to the kerb - there is a risk of damage to the wheels. If necessary, intervene in time.

i Note

- We recommend performing the parking at a safe speed to about 5 km/h.
- The parking procedure can be stopped at any time by pressing the P button » Fig. 181 *on page 142* button or by a steering intervention.

Functioning

Fig. 181
System button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 141 first.

The system support is provided in the following manner.
- While the parking space search is going on, a measurement and evaluation of the parking space size is completed.
- The display of the instrument cluster (hereinafter only display) shows suitable parking spaces and a parking mode is recommended.
- The display shows instructions and information before the start and during the parking.
- Based on the calculated road surface, the front wheels will be automatically rotated during the parking.

Conditions for the system function
The system can look for a parking space only if the following basic conditions are met.
- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ The vehicle is travelling at less than 40 km/h.
- ✓ The vehicle is travelling at less than 20 km/h.
- ✓ The distance to a number of parked vehicles is approximately 0.5 - 1.5 m.
- ✓ TCS is activated » page 130.

The system can only carry out the parking procedure if the following basic conditions are met.
- ✓ The vehicle is travelling at less than 7 km/h.
- ✓ The parking procedure takes less than 6 minutes.
- ✓ There is no driver intervention in the automatic steering operation.
- ✓ TCS is activated » page 130.
- ✓ The TCS does not engage.
- ✓ No trailer or other accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

Activation/deactivation
The system can be activated/deactivated by pressing the P button » Fig. 181.

When the system is activated, the P symbol illuminates in the button.

Parking space search

Read and observe ! and ! on page 141 first.

The system searches for a parking space in a number of parallel and transverse parked vehicles on the passenger or driver's side.

Process with the parking space search
› Slowly drive past a row of parked vehicles.
› Activate the system with the P button » Fig. 181 *on page 142*.

The system will automatically search for a parking space on the passenger side.

If the system finds a parking space, the recommended parking mode is displayed » Fig. 183 *on page 143* A or » Fig. 184 *on page 143* - A.

Activate the turn signal on the driver's side if you wish to look for a parking space on this side of the road. The display changes and the system searches for a parking space on the driver's side.

Note
If the symbol (km / h) is shown in the display while you are looking for a parking space, the vehicle speed should be reduced below 40 km / hr (parallel parking) or below 20 km / hr (Transverse parking).

Switch to park mode

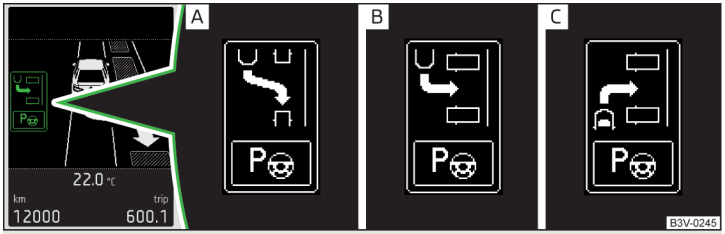

Fig. 182 **Menus with the parking modes: Display**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 141 first.

While the parking space search is going on and before the start of the parking, a menu may appear showing other suitable parking modes.

Parking modes » Fig. 182

- A To park backwards in a parallel parking space
- B To park backwards in a traverse parking space
- C To park forwards in a traverse parking space

The parking mode can be changed by pressing the P button » Fig. 181 *on page 142* button.

After switching through all parking modes offered, an additional press of the P button deactivates the system.

If you want to return to the originally recommended parking mode, press the P button again.

Reverse parking

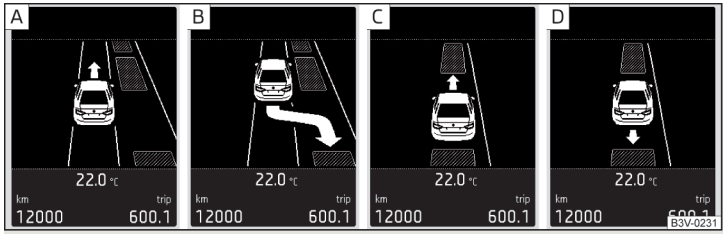

Fig. 183 **To park in a parallel parking space: Display**

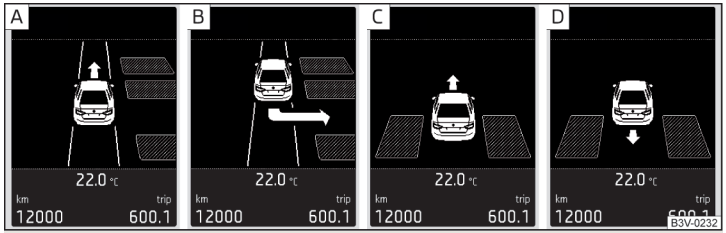

Fig. 184 **To park in a traverse parking space: Display**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 141 first.

The system supports the driver when reverse parking in the parking space found in a number of traverse and parallel parked vehicles.

Display » Fig. 183 or » Fig. 184

- A Parking space recognised with the information to drive on
- B Parking space recognised with the information to reverse
- C Note to drive on to the parking space
- D Note to reverse to the parking space

Process for reverse parking
The parking space found is shown in the display » Fig. 183 - A or » Fig. 184 - A.

› Continue driving forwards until B appears in the display.

› Stop and ensure that the vehicle does not continue to move forward until the parking procedure starts.
› Select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.
› As soon as the following message is shown in the display: **Steering int. active. Check area around veh.!**, let go of the steering wheel. The steering will be taken over by the system.
› Observe the direct vicinity of the vehicle and reverse carefully.

If necessary, the parking procedure can be continued with further steps.

› If the arrow in the information display is flashing to the front C, engage 1st gear or move the selector lever into the position **D/S**.

The display shows the icon (brake pedal).

› Depress the brake pedal and wait until the steering wheel automatically rotates into the required position, the symbol goes out.
› Carefully drive forwards.
› If the backwards arrow is flashing in the display - D, select reverse gear again or move the selector lever into position **R**.

The display shows the icon (brake pedal).

› Depress the brake pedal and wait until the steering wheel automatically rotates into the required position, the symbol goes out.
› Carefully move backwards.

You can repeat these steps several times in succession.

As soon as the parking procedure is complete, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the display.

Forwards parking

Fig. 185
To park forwards in a traverse parking space: Display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 141 first.

The system supports the driver when parking forward in the parking space found in a number parallel parked vehicles.

As soon as the system finds a parking space, select the P » Fig. 181 *on page 142* button for forwards parking mode » Fig. 182 *on page 143* - C. The display shows the following » Fig. 185.

The further procedure is analogous to that for reverse parking.

› Follow the system instructions shown in the display.

As soon as the parking procedure is complete, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the display.

The system is activated by pressing the P button and this is also possible if the vehicle has already been partially moved to a suitable parking space.

Departing from a parallel parking space

Read and observe ! and ! on page 141 first.

The system supports the driver when leaving a parking space of a parallel parking space.

Leaving a parking space process
› Press the P » Fig. 181 *on page 142* button.

The following message is displayed: **Park Assist: switch on turn signal and engage reverse gear!**

› Activate the turn signal for side of the vehicle where the parking space is out of which you wish to manoeuvre.
› Select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.

The further procedure is analogous to that for reverse parking.

› Follow the system instructions shown in the display.

As soon as the parking procedure is complete, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the display.

If the parking space is too small, it is not possible to use the system to leave the parking space. A corresponding message is shown in the information cluster display.

Automatic brake assist

Read and observe ! and ! on page 141 first.

Automatic brake assist when speeding
If a velocity of 7 km / h is exceeded during the parking manoeuvre for the first time, the speed will be automatically reduced by the system to less than 7 km / h. This prevents the parking manoeuvre from aborting.

Automatic emergency braking
If the system detects a risk of collision during parking, automatic emergency braking takes place to prevent a collision.

The parking is terminated by the emergency braking.

! CAUTION
The automatic emergency braking is not triggered by the system when the parking process stops due to the speed of 7 km / hr being exceeded!

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 141 first.

If, for some unknown reason, the system is not available, an appropriate message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

System unavailable
If the system is not available because the vehicle has a fault, a message appears concerning the unavailability. Seek help from a specialist garage.

System fault
In the case of a system fault, an error message appears. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Cruise Control System

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The Cruise Control System (CCS) maintains a set speed without you having to actuate the accelerator pedal. The state where the CCS maintains the speed is referred to hereinafter as the **control**.

! WARNING
- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 128, ! in section *Introduction*.
- After pressing the clutch pedal, no interrupted control occurs! For example, if a different gear is engaged and the clutch pedal is released, control is continued.

Function

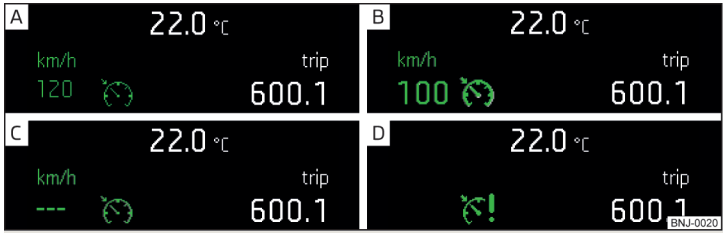

Fig. 186 **MAXI DOT display (monochrome): Examples of status displays the CCS**

Fig. 187 **Segment display: Examples of status displays the CCS**

Read and observe ! on page 145 first.

CCS status displays » Fig. 186, » Fig. 187

- A Speed is set, control is inactive (in the colour display the digits of speed limits is shown in grey).
- B Control active (in the colour display the digits of the speed limits are highlighted).
- C No speed set.
- D System fault - seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Basic requirements for start of control

- ✓ The CCS is activated.
- ✓ On vehicles with a **manual transmission**, the second gear or higher is engaged.
- ✓ On vehicles with an **automatic transmission**, the selector lever is in the **D/S** position or in the Tiptronic position.
- ✓ The current speed is greater than approx. 20 km/h.

This is only possible within the range which is permitted by the power output and braking power of the engine.

! WARNING

If the engine power and engine braking effect is insufficient in order to maintain the set speed, the acceleration and brake pedals must be taken over!

Description of operation

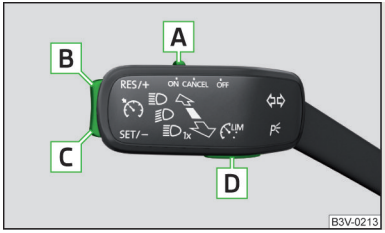

Fig. 188
Cruise control system controls

Read and observe ! on page 145 first.

Overview of the control elements of the CCS » Fig. 188

A	**ON**	Activate CCS (regulation deactivated)
	CANCEL	Interrupt control (sprung position)
	OFF	Deactivate CCS (delete set speed)
B	**RES/+**	Take control again[a] / Increase speed
C	**SET/–**	Launch control / reduce speed
D		Switching between CCS and speed limiter » page 147

[a] If no speed is set the current speed is adopted.

After the start of the regulation, the CCS regulates the vehicle to the current speed and the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

The **automatic control interruption** occurs if any of the following conditions are met.

- ▸ The brake pedal is operated.
- ▸ When one of the brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervenes.
- ▸ Through an airbag deployment.
- ▸ By pressing the button D » Fig. 188.

! WARNING

- Always deactivate the cruise control system after use to prevent the system being switched on unintentionally.
- Control may only be resumed if the set speed is not too high for the current traffic conditions.

Note

- During control, speed can be increased by pressing the accelerator pedal. Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.
- By pressing the button D » Fig. 188 during the regulation this is cancelled and the Speed Limiter is activated.

Speed limiter

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The Speed Limiter limits the maximum driving speed to the set speed limit.

This limit can only be exceeded by depressing the accelerator pedal fully.

The condition in which the Speed Limiter monitors a potential set speed limit excess is referred to as **Regulation**.

WARNING

The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 128, in section *Introduction*.

Function

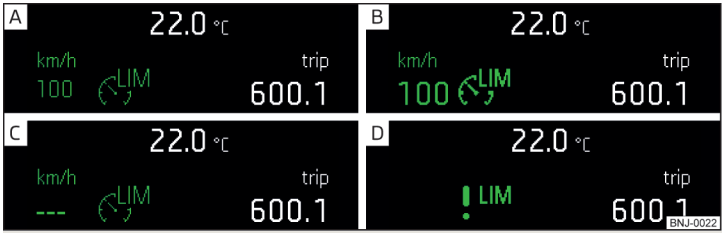

Fig. 189 **MAXI DOT display (monochrome): Examples of Speed Limiter status displays**

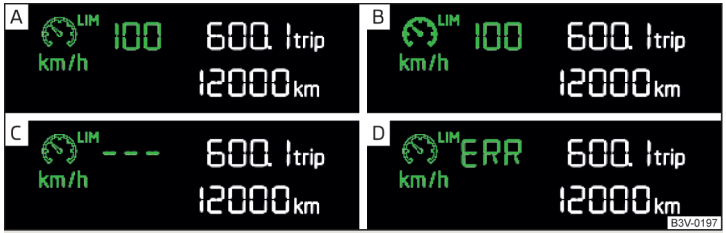

Fig. 190 **Segment display: Examples of Speed Limiter status displays**

Read and observe ! on page 147 first.

Status displays of the speed limiter » Fig. 189, » Fig. 190

A Speed limit is set, control is inactive (in the colour display the digits of speed limits is shown in grey).

B Control active (in the colour display the digits of the speed limits are highlighted).

C No speed limit set.

D System fault - seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Basic requirements for start of control

✓ The Speed Limiter is activated.

✓ The current speed is greater than approx. 30 km/h.

Description of operation

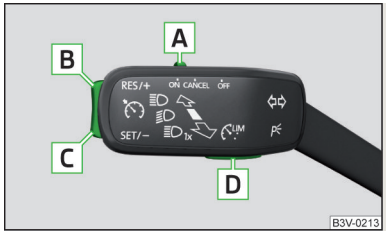

Fig. 191
Operating elements of the speed limiter

Read and observe ! on page 147 first.

Overview of the control elements of the speed limiter » Fig. 191

A	**ON**	Activate CCS (required condition for the subsequent activation of the speed limiter) To activate the speed limiter the switch is to be adjusted to position **ON**, then press D to operate.
	CANCEL	Interrupt control (sprung position)
	OFF	Speed Limiter disable (set limit delete)
B	**RES/+**	Take control again [a]/ increase speed - press (in increments of 1 km/h), hold (in increments of 10 km/h)
C	**SET/–**	Start regulation / reduce speed - press (in increments of 1 km/h), hold (in increments of 10 km/h)
D		Switching between CCS and speed limiter

[a] If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

After starting the system, the current speed is set as the speed limit, the warning light lights up in the instrument cluster.

Exceeding the speed limit during the regulation
If, during the control, it is necessary to exceed the speed limit (e.g. to overtake), the accelerator pedal must be pressed fully.

When exceeding the speed limit (e.g. driving down a hill), an acoustic signal sounds and the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The regulation is resumed once the speed has fallen below the set limit.

Note
By pressing the button D » Fig. 191 during the regulation this is cancelled and the CCS is activated.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The Adaptive Cruise Control (hereinafter referred to as ACC) maintains the set speed or the distance to the vehicle ahead without the accelerator or brake pedal being pressed.

The front of the vehicle and the distance to the vehicle ahead is monitored by a radar sensor » page 128.

The state in which the ACC maintains the speed or the proximity is described as **control** from here on.

! WARNING
- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 128, ! in section *Introduction*.
- The driver must always be ready to take over the operation of the accelerator and brake pedal.
- The ACC does not react when approaching a stationary obstacle, such as traffic jams, vehicle breakdowns or vehicles waiting at a traffic light.
- The ACC does not respond to crossing or oncoming objects.
- If the ACC does not decelerate fast enough, immediately apply the vehicle's foot brake.

WARNING

For safety reasons, do not use the ACC under the following conditions.

- When driving in turning lanes, motorway exits or construction sites, to avoid an unwanted acceleration to the stored speed.
- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
- When road conditions are poor (e.g. ice, slippery road, gravel, dirt road).
- Driving in "sharp" corners or in steep gradients / on steep inclines.
- When driving through places where metal objects (such as metal buildings, railway tracks, etc.) can be found.
- When driving through very divided and enclosed spaces (such as large-capacity garages, car ferries, tunnels and the like.).

Note

- The ACC is designed primarily for use on motorways.
- The ACC reduces the speed by automatically releasing the accelerator or by means of a braking procedure as appropriate. If the brakes are used for an automatic speed reduction at any moments, then the brake light illuminates.
- In case of failure of more than one brake light on the vehicle or on the connected trailer, the ACC becomes unavailable.
- The control automatically cancels the engagement of the brake supportive assistance systems (e.g. ESC) or when the maximum permitted engine speed is exceeded.

Operation

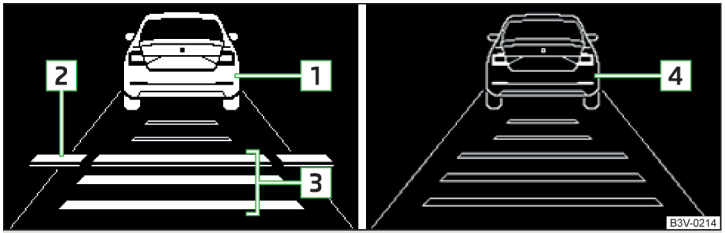

Fig. 192 **Instrument cluster display: Examples of ACC displays**

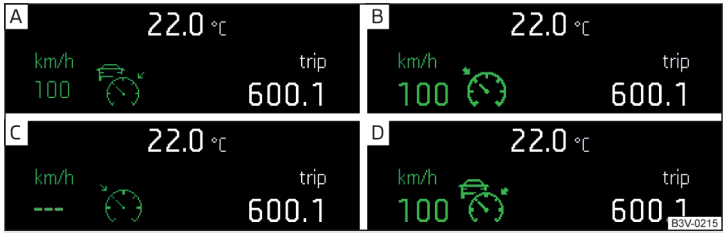

Fig. 193 **Instrument cluster display: Examples of ACC status displays**

Read and observe ! on page 148 first.

The ACC allows you to set a speed of 30 - 160 or 210 km / h (depending on equipment) and the distance to the vehicle ahead in the range of a very short to a very long distance.

The ACC adjusts the set speed with respect to the detected vehicle ahead, thus maintaining the selected proximity.

The ACC can detect a vehicle that is up to approx. 150 m ahead using the radar sensor.

ACC display » Fig. 192

1 Vehicle detected (control active)
2 Line showing the displacement of the distance when setting. » page 151, *Set the clearance level*
3 Set distance to the vehicle ahead
4 Vehicle detected (control deactivated)

ACC status displays » Fig. 193

A Regulation is inactive (in the colour display the digits of speed limits is shown in grey).
B Regulation active - no vehicle detected (in the colour display the digits of the speed limits are highlighted).
C Regulation deactivated - no speed stored.
D Regulation active - vehicle detected (in the colour display the digits of the speed limits are highlighted).

Note to reduce speed
If the delay of the ACC is insufficient in relation to the vehicle in front, the warning light lights up in the instrument cluster and the display shows a message to engage the brake pedal.

Regulation according to the vehicle in the adjacent lane
During regulation your vehicle may be regulated according to the vehicle in the adjacent lane.

This could occur at speeds above about 80 km/h when your vehicle is moving faster than the vehicle in the adjacent lane on the driver's side. The display shows the detected vehicle is in the adjacent lane.

Note
Some ACC notifications in the display of the instrument cluster may be hidden by notifications for other functions. An ACC notification automatically appears for a brief moment when there is a change in status of the ACC.

Automatic stop-start

Read and observe ! on page 148 first.

Vehicles with an **automatic transmission** can decelerate to a standstill and start moving again using the ACC.

Decelerate to a standstill
If a vehicle ahead decelerates to a standstill, the ACC will also decelerate your vehicle to a standstill.

Starting to drive again after a holding period
As soon as the vehicle ahead starts moving again after a holding period, your vehicle will also move and the speed will continue to be regulated.

If the preceding vehicle starts moving again after a long break, then to continue the regulation press the accelerator pedal or lever to position **RESUME**adjust» page 150, *Operation overview*.

Operation overview

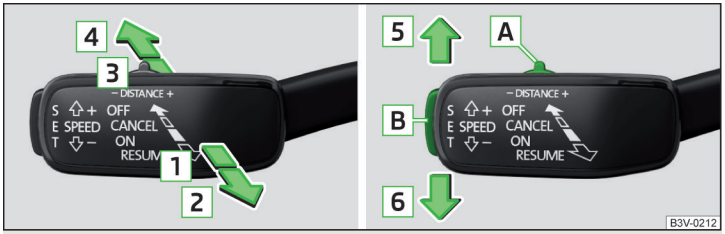

Fig. 194 **Operating lever**

Read and observe ! on page 148 first.

Overview of ACC functions operated with the lever » Fig. 194

1	**ON**	Activate ACC (regulation deactivated)
2	**RESUME**	Start control (resume) / increase speed by 1 km/h at a time (sprung position)
3	**CANCEL**	Interrupt control (sprung position)
4	**OFF**	Deactivate ACC
5	**SPEED +**	Increase speed by 10 km/h at a time
6	**SPEED –**	Decrease speed by 10 km/h at a time
A	**– DISTANCE +**	Set proximity level
B	**SET**	Start control / reduce speed in increments of 1 km/h

If the lever is set from the position **OFF** directly into the sprung position, **RESUME** the current speed is stored and the control process is started.

Start control

Read and observe ! on page 148 first.

Basic requirements for start of control
- ✓ The ACC is activated.
- ✓ On vehicles with **manual transmission**, the second gear or a higher gear is selected and the current speed is greater than 25 km/h.
- ✓ On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, the selector lever is in the **D/S** position or in the Tiptronic position.

Start control

› Press the button **SET** » Fig. 194 *on page 150* button.
› **or:** set the lever in the sprung **RESUME** » Fig. 194 *on page 150* position.

The ACC takes the current driving speed and performs the control, the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

If the control is started by moving the lever to the position **RESUME** and should the speed be stored already, the ACC adopts this speed and executes control.

Note

If control is started at a speed of less than 30 km/h on vehicles with an automatic transmission, the speed of 30 km/h is stored. The speed increases automatically to 30 km/h or is regulated with respect to the speed of the vehicle ahead.

Stop/resume control

Read and observe ! on page 148 first.

Stop control

› Set the lever into the sprung position **CANCEL** » Fig. 194 *on page 150* position.
› **or:** apply the brake.

Control stops, the speed remains stored.

Resume control

› Start control » page 150, *Start control*.

Note

Control is also stopped when the clutch pedal is held down for longer than 30 s or the TCS is deactivated.

Set/change the desired speed

Read and observe ! on page 148 first.

The desired speed can be set or changed using the control lever » Fig. 194 *on page 150*.

Setting/changing the speed by increments of 10 km/h at a time (SPEED) - requirements

✓ The ACC is activated.

Increasing/reducing the speed by increments of 1 km/h at a time (RESUME/SET- requirements

✓ The ACC is activated.
✓ Vehicle control takes place.

Changing the speed by adopting the current speed (SET) - requirements

✓ The ACC is activated.
✓ The vehicle is moving at a speed **other** than that which is stored.

Note

- If during control the speed is increased by pressing the accelerator, control is temporarily stopped. Upon releasing the accelerator, control is automatically resumed.
- If during control the speed is reduced by applying the brake, control is stopped. Control needs to be restarted in order to resume » page 150.
- If the vehicle is controlled by a lower speed than the stored speed, then **SET** the current speed is stored by pressing the button again **SET** and the speed is reduced in increments of 1 km/h.

Set the clearance level

Read and observe ! on page 148 first.

The proximity to the vehicle ahead can be set with the lever » Fig. 194 *on page 150* or in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.

Setting by means of the lever

› Set the switch **DISTANCE** to the sprung position **–** or **+** » Fig. 194 *on page 150*.

The display of the instrument cluster shows line 2 » Fig. 192 *on page 149*, which indicates the proximity.

› Using the switch **DISTANCE** on the lever, adjust the line 2 to the desired distance.

Note

- If the proximity is changed in infotainment, the change will only come into effect after a subsequent activation of the ACC.
- The higher the speed, the greater the proximity to the vehicle ahead.
- The adjustment of the distance is stored (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 46.

Special driving conditions

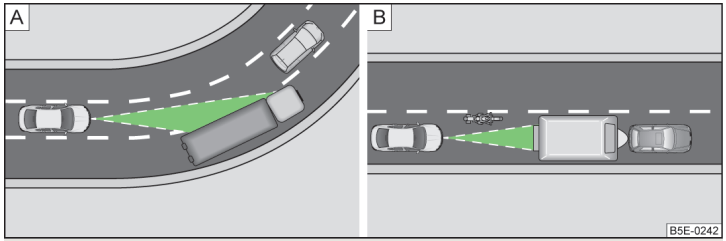

Fig. 195 **Cornering / narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side**

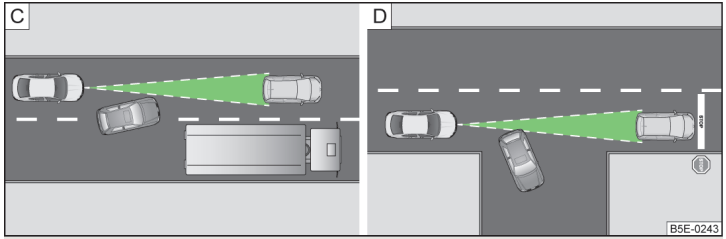

Fig. 196 **Lane changes of other vehicles / stationary vehicles**

Read and observe ! on page 148 first.

The following (and similar) situations require special attention and possibly the intervention of the driver (braking, accelerating etc.).

When cornering
When driving into or driving out of long corners, it could be that a vehicle is travelling in the adjacent lane and is scanned by the radar » Fig. 195 - A. The host vehicle is then controlled according to this vehicle.

Narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side
A narrow or offset vehicle driving can only be recognized by the ACC if this is located in the scanning range of the radar » Fig. 195 - B.

Other vehicles changing lanes
Vehicles that change onto the lane with a small distance » Fig. 196 - C may not be detected by ACC in good time.

Stationary vehicles
The ACC does not detect stationary objects! When a vehicle detected by the ACC turns or sheers off and there is a stationary vehicle in front of this vehicle, » Fig. 196 - Dthe ACC does not respond to the stationary vehicle.

Vehicles with special load or special body parts
Other vehicles with a load or with body parts protruding from the sides, back or top of the vehicle contour may not be detected by the ACC.

Overtaking and towing

Read and observe ! on page 148 first.

When overtaking
When your vehicle is being controlled at a speed that is lower than the set speed and the turn signal is operated, ACC assesses this situation as meaning that the driver wishes to overtake. The ACC automatically accelerates the vehicle, thereby reducing the proximity to a vehicle ahead.

If your vehicle changes to the overtaking lane and no vehicle is detected ahead, ACC accelerates until the set speed is reached and then keeps it constant.

Acceleration can be cancelled at any time by touch on the brake pedal or pressing the button **CANCEL** on the lever » Fig. 194 *on page 150*.

Towing a trailer
When towing, or if another accessory is connected to the trailer socket, ACC control is set with a lower rate. The manner of driving should therefore be adapted to this limitation.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! on page 148 first.

If, for some unknown reason, ACC is not available, the warning light appears in the display of the instrument cluster and an appropriate message is shown. ▶

Sensor covered / dirty
If the sensor cover or the sensor is dirty or covered, a message appears on the instrument cluster display stating there is no sensor view. Clean the sensor cover or remove the obstacles » Fig. 163 *on page 128*.

If there is no sensor view in the winter, the snow on the sensor under the cover could be the reason. The ACC is functional again after the snow melts away from the sensor.

ACC not available
If the ACC is currently unavailable, a message concerning the unavailability appears. Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again. If ACC continues to be unavailable, seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

ACC fault
With an ACC fault, an error message appears. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Front Assist

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The Front Assist (hereinafter referred to as the system) warns you of the danger of a collision with a vehicle or another obstacle in front of the vehicle, and tries to avoid a collision or mitigate its consequences by automatically applying the brakes where necessary.

The area in front of the vehicle is monitored by a radar sensor» page 128.

WARNING
- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems» page 128, ! in section *Introduction*.
- The system does not respond to crossing or oncoming objects.

CAUTION
In case of failure of more than one brake light on the vehicle or on the electrically connected trailer, the system becomes unavailable.

Operation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 153 first.

The system support is provided in the following manner.
- Alerts you about a dangerous proximity to the vehicle ahead.
- Warns you of an impending collision.
- Assists with a brake action triggered by the driver.
- If the driver fails to respond to a detected danger, an automatic braking action is performed.

The system can work only if the following basic conditions are met.
✓ The system is activated.
✓ TCS is activated » page 130.
✓ The vehicle is travelling forwards at a speed of more than approx. 5 km/h.

Note
The system can be impaired or may not be available, for example when driving in "sharp "curves or with an ESC engagement » page 129.

Distance warning

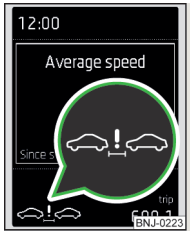

Fig. 197
Instrument cluster display: distance warning

Read and observe ! and ! on page 153 first.

The display of the distance warning is for vehicles with MAXI DOT display.

If a safe distance from the vehicle ahead is fallen short of, the warning light » Fig. 197 appears in the display.

Immediately increase the proximity if the current traffic situation allows you to do so!

The proximity at which the warning is displayed depends on the current speed.

The warning may occur when driving between about 60 km/h and 210 km/h.

Warning and automatic braking

Fig. 198
Instrument cluster display: Warning or emergency braking at low speed

Read and observe ! and ! on page 153 first.

Emergency braking at low speed
If there is a risk of collision in a vehicle speed range of about 5 km/h to 30 km/h, the system triggers an automatic braking.

With automatic braking, the warning light » Fig. 198 appears in the display.

Advance warning
If the system detects a risk of collision, the warning light » Fig. 198 appears in the display and you will hear an acoustic signal.

The pre-warning display can occur in the following situations.
- If there is a risk of collision with a moving obstacle at a driving speed range of approx. 30 km/h to approx. 210 km/h.
- If there is a risk of collision with a stationary obstacle at a driving speed range of approx. 30 km/h to approx. 85 km/h.

With a warning the brake pedal must be pressed or the moving obstacle is to be avoided!

Acute alert
If the driver does not react to the advance warning, the system briefly applies the brake automatically via an active brake intervention to draw attention to the potential danger of a collision again.

Automatic Braking
If the driver does not respond to acute warning, the system begins to automatically brake the vehicle.

If an automatic brake intervention is triggered by the system, the pressure in the brake system increases and the brake pedal cannot be operated with the normal pedal stroke.

The automatic braking interventions can be cancelled by pressing the accelerator pedal or by means of a steering intervention.

Brake assist
If the driver brakes inadequate with an impending collision, the system automatically increases braking force.

The braking assistance only occurs as long as the brake pedal is being firmly pressed down.

Deactivation/activation

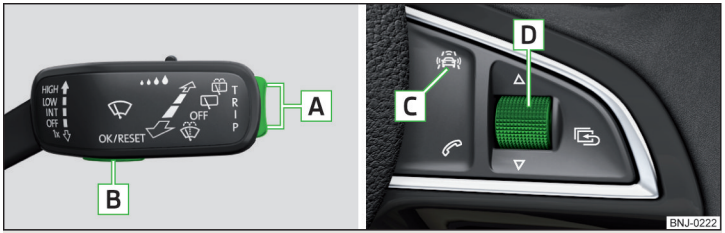

Fig. 199 **Buttons/dials: the lever / on the multifunction steering wheel**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 153 first.

The system is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

The system should only be disabled in exceptional cases » !.

On vehicles with the MAXI DOT display, the system can be activated/deactivated in the main menu » page 45, *Menu item* **Assist systems**.

Deactivation / activation in vehicles with segment display

Button » Fig. 199	Action	Operation
A	Hold up / down	Show Front Assist menu item

Button » Fig. 199	Action	Operation
B	Press	Deactivate/activate system

Deactivation / activation in vehicles with multi-function steering wheel

Button / dial » Fig. 199	Action	Operation
C	Press	Show Front Assist menu item
D	Press	Deactivate/activate system

Disable / enable and setting in the Infotainment
In Infotainment, the entire system or the functions warning and distance warning can be deactivated/activated » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.

The distance-warning function was deactivated before the ignition was switched off, it remains deactivated after the ignition is switched on again.

WARNING

In the following situations, Front Assist should be switched off for safety reasons.
- When the vehicle is being towed away.
- When the vehicle is on a rolling test bench.
- If an unfounded warning or a system action was taken.
- When on a truck, or a car ferry service or similar.

Malfunctions

Read and observe and on page 153 first.

If, for some unknown reason, the system is not available, an appropriate message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Sensor covered / dirty
If the sensor cover or the sensor is dirty or covered, a message appears on the instrument cluster display stating there is no sensor view. Clean the sensor cover or remove the obstacles » Fig. 163 *on page 128*.

If there is no sensor view in the winter, the snow on the sensor under the cover could be the reason. The system is functional again after the snow melts away from the sensor.

System unavailable
If the system is currently unavailable, a message concerning the unavailability appears. Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again. If the system still is not available, seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

Selection of the driving mode (Driving Mode Selection)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

By selecting the driving mode, the driving behaviour can be adapted to the desired mode of operation.

The following modes are available **Comfort**, **Normal**, **Sport**, **Eco** and **Individual**.

The mode **Comfort** is only available on vehicles with adaptive chassis control (DCC).

WARNING

Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems» page 128, in section *Introduction*.

Adaptive Chassis Control (DCC)

Read and observe on page 155 first.

The adaptive chassis control (following known as DCC) provides the ability to adjust the shock characteristics for the sporty, normal or comfortable driving when the corresponding control mode is selected.

The DCC evaluates steering response and road conditions while driving continuously and adjusts the suspension behaviour within the selected driving mode accordingly.

ModeComfort

Read and observe ! on page 155 first.

This mode is suitable for driving on roads with poorer surface or for long motorway journeys.

Mode Normal

Read and observe ! on page 155 first.

This mode is suitable for a conventional driving.

Mode Sport

Read and observe ! on page 155 first.

This mode is suitable for a sporty driving.

Selecting this mode primarily affects the function of the following systems.

DCC
The DCC adjusts the chassis for the sporty driving style.

Steering
The power steering is reduced slightly, i.e., the driver needs to exert more force for steering .

Drive
The vehicle acceleration is more dynamic than in **Normal** mode.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
The acceleration is quicker than in **Normal** mode with distance control » page 148.

Xenon headlight
The headlamps adapt to the driving style more dynamically than in mode **Normal** » page 66.

ProActive passenger protection
The first level of protection is deactivated » page 157.

Mode Eco

Read and observe ! on page 155 first.

This mode is suitable for a relaxed style of driving and helps to save fuel.

Selecting this mode primarily affects the function of the following systems.

Drive
Vehicle acceleration is more relaxed than in **Normal** mode.

The recommended gear is controlled such to achieve the lowest possible fuel consumption » page 42.

If the START-STOP system is deactivated manually» page 119, this will be automatically activated.

The automatic gearbox is set automatically to mode **E** » page 124.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
Acceleration occurs more relaxed than in **Normal** » page 148mode with distance control.

Xenon headlight
The system is in economic mode » page 66. The headlamps are in basic setting and do not adapt to the direction of travel.

Air conditioning (Climatronic)
The air conditioning is controlled so as to save energy. For this reason, for example, it may take longer to reach the desired interior temperature in mode **Normal**.

Note

- If a trailer or other accessory is to be connected to the trailer socket, driving mode **Eco** is not available.
- The maximum vehicle acceleration (kick down function) is possible also in driving mode **Eco**.

Mode Individual

Read and observe ! on page 155 first.

In the mode **Individual** each system can be set independently » page 157, *Settings for mode* **Individual**.

Mode selection and Infotainment display

Fig. 200 **Button for selecting the driving mode / Display in Infotainment display**

Read and observe ! on page 155 first.

Procedure for the selection of the driving mode

› Press the MODE » Fig. 200 button.

In the Infotainment display a running mode menu » Fig. 200 appears.

The mode is changed by repeatedly pressing the MODE button or by tapping the corresponding function surface in the Infotainment display.

If a driving mode other than **Normal** is selected, then the symbol MODE illuminates on the button.

If the mode **Sport** or **Individual** was set prior to the engine being switched off (Drive - Sport), the drive changes to **Normal** mode after the engine is started. In order to switch back to **Sport**, select mode **Sport** or **Individual** or set the selector lever of the automatic transmission to mode **S**.

Function surfaces in the display » Fig. 200

A Sets the mode **Individual** and information on the setting of the currently selected mode

B Cancel the menu to select driving mode

C Modes (the surface of the selected mode is shown in green)

Note

- The currently selected running mode is displayed in the Infotainment in the status bar of the main menu of the symbol.
- The selected driving mode and the setting of the mode **Individual** is stored in the active user account personalisation » page 46.
- If the driving mode menu is not operated within a few seconds, the Infotainment switches to the last selected menu or switches off.

Settings for mode Individual

Read and observe ! on page 155 first.

In the **Individual** mode, the following menu items can be set.

- **DCC:** - Set the shock characteristics
- **Steering:** - Set the power steering characteristics
- **Drive:** - set the drive characteristics
- **ACC:** - Set the vehicle acceleration when adaptive cruise control is activated
- **Dynamic cornering light:** - Set the characteristics of the Xenon headlights
- **Air conditioning:** - Set the Climatronic characteristics
- **Reset mode** - Setting for all menu items in the **Individual** mode to **Normal**
  - **Cancel** - Keep the current settings
  - **Reset** - cancels all menu items in the **Normal** mode

Proactive passenger protection (Crew Protect Assist)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

ProActive passenger protection (following known as system) increases passenger protection in the front seats in situations that could lead to vehicle impact or overturning.

! WARNING

Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 128, ! in section *Introduction*.

Note

The system component service life is monitored electronically. Further information » page 35, *Safety systems*.

Function

Read and observe ! on page 157 first.

In critical driving situations (e.g. during emergency braking or a sudden change in direction), the following steps can be taken separately or combined in order to reduce the risk of serious injury.

- The front passenger's and driver's seatbelts, if worn, are automatically **tensioned** closely over the body.
- Opened door windows in the front doors are closed automatically up to a gap of about 5 cm from the edge.
- The sliding/tilting roof is closed.

Once the critical driving situation has passed, the tension on the seatbelts will be released again.

The system operates at two levels of protection.

The first level of protection
The system already intervenes in situations that may occur during dynamic driving. As a result, this primarily helps to keep the driver and the passenger in the correct seated position.

The first protection level can be deactivated in one of the following ways.

- System deactivation in Infotainment » *User manual - Infotainment*.
- Deactivating the TCS» page 130.
- Selecting the driving mode **Sport** » page 157.

Provided that the driving mode **Sport**is not selected, the system is activated over the two levels of protection after switching the ignition off and on again.

The second level of protection
The system intervenes only if the situation is evaluated as critical, such as when panic braking at high speeds.

This level of protection cannot be deactivated.

Vehicles with the Front Assist system
Using this information, a system intervention may also occur when there is the danger of a collision with an obstacle detected in front of the vehicle.

Note
If the front passenger front airbag is deactivated, the belt tensioning function for the front passenger seat is switched off.

Lane Departure Warning (Lane Assist)

Introduction

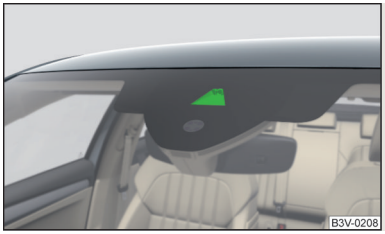

Fig. 201
Sensor for Lane Assist

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The lane departure warning (following known as system) helps to keep the vehicle between the boundary lines of a lane.

The system recognises the boundary lines of the lane using a sensor » Fig. 201.

When the vehicle approaches a detected line between lanes, the system makes a **light** movement of the steering wheel in the opposite direction to the boundary line. This corrective steering intervention can be manually overridden at any time.

! WARNING

- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 128, ! in section *Introduction*.
- Lane Assist can help you keep the vehicle within the lane. However, it does not steer the vehicle for you. The driver retains full responsibility for steering at all times.
- Some objects or markings on the road can be recognised as the boundary lines - an erroneous steering intervention may be the result.

WARNING

The system may not be able to recognise the boundary line, or recognise it incorrectly, for example, in the following situations.
- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
- When driving in "sharp" bends.
- The sensor is blinded by the sun or oncoming traffic.
- The field of view of the sensor is limited by an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.

CAUTION

Do not attach any stickers or similar objects in front of the sensor on the windscreen to avoid impairing the functions of the system.

Note

- The system is designed for driving on motorways and roads with adequate longitudinal markings.
- The system can detect both continuous and broken lines.

Operation

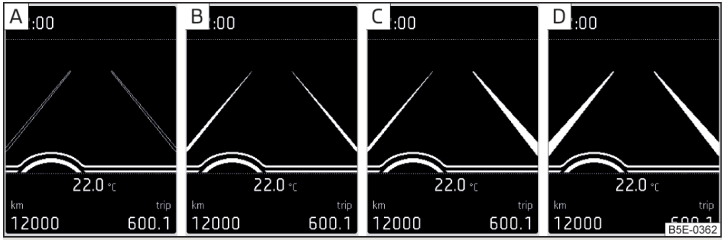

Fig. 202 **Monochromatic display of the instrument cluster: Examples of system indications**

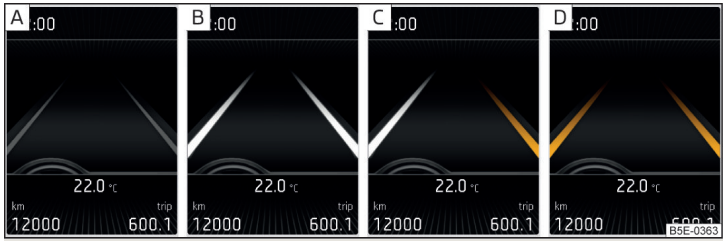

Fig. 203 **Colour display of the instrument cluster: Examples of system indications**

Read and observe and on page 158 first.

System displays» Fig. 202 and » Fig. 203

A The system is active, but not ready to intervene.
B The system is active and ready to intervene.
C The system intervenes when approaching the right-hand boundary lane.
D Adaptive tracking takes place.

The system can intervene when the following basic conditions are present.

✓ The system is activated.
✓ The vehicle is travelling at more than around 65 km/h[1].
✓ The boundary line of at least one side of the lane is detected.
✓ The driver's hands are on the steering wheel.
✓ The lane is more than 2.5 m in width.

If the turn signal is switched on (e.g. when turning), no steering intervention takes place when the vehicle approaches the boundary line. The system regards the situation as an intended lane change.

Warning lights in the instrument cluster

The system is active, but not ready to intervene.
The system is active and ready to intervene or is currently intervening.

Adaptive lane assist

Adaptive tracking helps to keep the vehicle in the position between the boundary lines selected by the driver, by means of steering intervention.

[1] Not valid for vehicles with the traffic jam assistant » page 160.

If the position within the lane is changed, the system quickly adapts and holds the newly-selected position.

Steering wheel vibrations
In the following situations, it may occasionally be the case that due to the steering wheel vibrations the syst4em indicates that a driver steering intervention is required.
- The system is not able to keep the vehicle by a within the lane due to a steering intervention.
- During an intense system-related steering intervention, the system suddenly cannot recognize the boundary lines.

WARNING
The system function may be restricted if, for example there is danger due to ruts on a downhill road or in a crosswind.

Activation / deactivation

Read and observe and on page 158 first.

The activation/deactivation of the system can be carried out in one of two ways.
- In the instrument cluster display » page 45, *Menu item* **Assist systems**.
- Infotainment » *Owner's Manual - Infotainment*

Adaptive tracking can also be enabled or disabled In Infotainment.

After switching off and switching on the ignition, the system setting is retained.

Note
The system setting is stored (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 46.

Malfunctions

Read and observe and on page 158 first.

If, for some unknown reason, the system is not available, an appropriate message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Sensor covered / dirty
If the windscreen is dirty, iced or misted up in the sensor area, a message appears indicating that there is no sensor view. Clean the windscreen or remove the obstacles from the sensor area.

System unavailable
If the system is currently unavailable, a message concerning the unavailability appears. Try to re-activate the machine. If the system still is not available, seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

System fault
In the case of a system fault, an error message appears. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Request to take over steering
If the system detects that there are no hands are on the steering wheel, this will not work properly. You will be prompted to take over steering. Place your hands on the steering wheel.

Traffic jam assistant

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING
- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 128, in section *Introduction*.
- The driver must always have hands on the steering wheel and be ready to take over steering of the vehicle himself (accelerate or brake).

Note
The system is designed primarily for use on motorways.

Function

Read and observe ! on page 160 first.

The traffic jam assistant (referred to as system) helps to keep the vehicle within the lane at speeds below 65 km/h while keeping the distance to the vehicle ahead.

The system is only available for vehicles with **Automatic transmission**.

The traffic jam assistant is an extension of the systems Lane Assist » page 158 and ACC » page 148 and works by using the functions of these two systems.

For this reason, the chapters on System Lane Assist and ACC are to be read carefully and the safety notes are to be observed.

Operating conditions

Read and observe ! on page 160 first.

The system activation occurs automatically whilst fulfilling the following basic conditions.

✓ Lane Assist with the adaptive tracking is enabled, the boundary lines on both sides are recognized lane » page 158.
✓ ACC is activated and the regulation » page 148 follows.
✓ The vehicle speed is below 65 km/h.

Assistant for emergencies

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

! WARNING

- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 128, ! in section *Introduction*.
- The system is intended for emergency situations when the driver is suddenly unable to take over the steering task. Therefore, never try to test out the system - there is a risk of an accident!

Function

Read and observe ! on page 161 first.

The assistant for emergencies (following known as system) detects inactivity of the driver, which for example can be caused by a sudden loss of consciousness. The system then performs measures as safely as possible to decelerate the vehicle to a stop.

The system is only available for vehicles with **Automatic transmission**.

The assistant for emergencies is an extension of the systems Lane Assist » page 158 and ACC » page 148 and works by using the functions of these two systems.

For this reason, the chapters on System Lane Assist and ACC are to be read carefully and the safety notes are to be observed.

System intervention
If the system detects the driver's inactivity, it draws attention to this fact by a beep and a message on the display of the instrument cluster. It keeps the vehicle in its lane.

If the driver does not take over the steering even after a repeated warning, the system automatically brakes the vehicle and after it has come to a standstill the parking brake switch on.

With automatic braking, the hazard warning system is switched on.

The automatic braking interventions can be cancelled by pressing the accelerator pedal or by means of a steering intervention.

Operating conditions

Read and observe ! on page 161 first.

The system can intervene when the following basic conditions are present.

✓ Lane Assist is activated and the boundary line is detected at least on one side of the lane » page 158.
✓ ACC is activated and the regulation » page 148 follows.

Traffic sign recognition

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The traffic sign recognition (following known as system) shows certain traffic signs (e.g. speed limits) on the display of the instrument cluster and if necessary warns against excessive speeds.

WARNING

- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 128, ! in section *Introduction*.
- Vertical traffic signs must always take precedence over the traffic signs shown in the display. The driver is always responsible for correctly assessing the traffic situation.
- Speed specifications in the displayed road signs refer to the customary speed units. For example, the display ㊱ can therefore refer to country-specific km/h or mph.

WARNING

The traffic signs may not be displayed or displayed incorrectly in the system e.g. in the following situations.

- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
- The sensor is blinded by the sun or oncoming traffic.
- The field of view of the sensor is limited by an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.
- Travelling at high speed.
- The traffic signs are covered (e.g. by trees, snow or dirt).
- The traffic signs are not standard (round with a red border) or are damaged.
- The traffic signs are attached to flashing neon signs.
- The traffic signs were changed (the navigation data are out of date).

Note

The system is only available in some countries.

Function

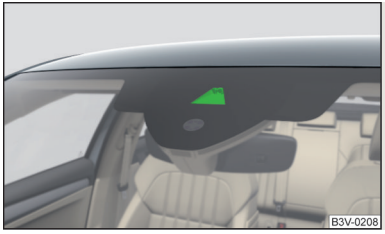

Fig. 204
Sensor for traffic sign recognition

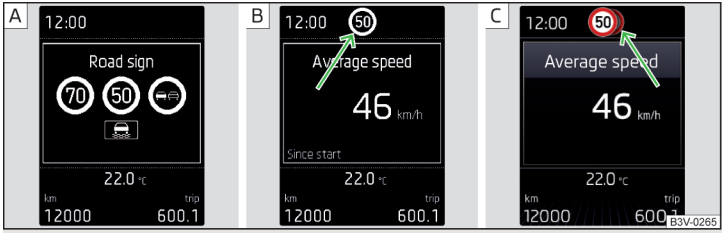

Fig. 205 **Instrument cluster display: Display examples**

Read and observe ! on page 162 first.

Description of indications and displayed traffic signs

Display » Fig. 205

A Display of detected traffic signs » page 43, *Driving data (Multifunction display)*

B Additional display (monochromatic display)

C Additional display (colour display)

The system can display the following (vertical) traffic signs where identified.

- Speed limit.
- Overtaking prohibited.

Additional signs, such as 'when wet' or signs which only apply for a limited time can also be displayed.

The system displays only traffic signs that are in the "viewing area" of the sensor » Fig. 204.

Data from the sensor is supplemented by information from the Infotainment Navigation. This is the reason why traffic signs with maximum speeds can also be shown on sections of roads which do not have any traffic signs.

Warning when exceeding the speed limit
The warning when exceeding the permissible speed (based on the detected traffic sign) can be activated and set in Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.

Mode when towing a trailer
For vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, in the Infotainment it is possible to enable or disable the relevant traffic signs for trailer operation and the top speed for towing a trailer » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.

Additional display

Read and observe ! on page 162 first.

If the menu item Road sign is currently not shown » Fig. 205 *on page 162* - A, the road sign with the speed limit will appear in the upper display area of the instrument cluster » Fig. 205 *on page 162* - B, C.

If several traffic signs are detected simultaneously, in some cases the next traffic sign will also be displayed in the colour display - » Fig. 205 *on page 162* - C.

All detected traffic signs can be displayed via the multifunction display in the menu item Traffic Sign Recognition » Fig. 205 *on page 162* - A.

This additional function can be activated/deactivated in Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.

Note
The setting (activation/deactivation) of the auxiliary display will be saved (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 46.

Malfunctions and information messages

Read and observe ! on page 162 first.

If, for some unknown reason, the system is not available, an appropriate message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Sensor covered / dirty
If the screen in the sensor area is dirty, iced or misted, a caution to clean the screen appears. Clean the windscreen or remove the obstacles from the sensor area.

System fault
In the case of a system fault, an error message appears. Seek help from a specialist garage.

System limitation (Navigation data not available)
If the Infotainment Navigation submits no data, a message regarding the limitation of the system function appears. Check whether the map documents are up to date or whether the vehicle is currently in a location for which no navigation data are available.

Traffic signs unavailable
No speed restriction is detected, a message is displayed regarding the unavailability of road signs.

Fatigue detection

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The fatigue detection system (following known as system) recommends the driver taking a break from driving when, because of the driver's steering behaviour, driver fatigue can be detected.

! WARNING
- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 128, ! in section *Introduction*.
- For the driving ability is always the driver's responsibility. Never drive if you feel tired.
- The system may not detect all cases where a break is needed.
- Therefore, take regular, sufficient breaks during long trips.
- There will be no system warning during the so-called micro-sleep.

Note

- In some situations, the system may evaluate the driving incorrectly and thus mistakenly recommend a break (e.g. sporty driving, adverse weather conditions or poor road conditions).
- The system is designed primarily for use on motorways.

Function

Read and observe ! on page 163 first.

From the starting of the journey, the system evaluates the steering behaviour at speeds 65-200 km/h. If, while driving, there have been changes in the steering behaviours that are evaluated by the system as indicating possible fatigue, a break recommendation is issued.

Conditions under which a break from driving is detected by the system

- The vehicle is stopped and the ignition switched off.
- The vehicle is stopped, the seat belt removed and the driver's door opened.
- The vehicle is stopped for more than 15 minutes.

If none of these conditions are met or if the driving style is not changed, the system recommends a driving break again after 15 minutes.

The system can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.

Pause recommendation

The icon appears and the following message for a few seconds in the display of the instrument cluster and a message about the detected fatigue. An audible signal is also emitted.

Tyre pressure monitoring

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The tyre pressure monitoring function (following known as system) monitors the tyre pressure while driving.

If the tyre inflation pressure changes, the warning light lights up in the instrument cluster and an audible signal is heard» page 35, *Tyre pressure*.

The system can only function properly if the tyres have the prescribed inflation pressure and these pressure values are stored in the system.

WARNING

- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 128, ! in section *Introduction*.
- Having the correct tyre inflation pressure is always the driver's responsibility. Tyre pressure should be checked regularly » page 192.
- The system cannot warn in case of very rapid tyre inflation pressure loss, e.g. in case of sudden tyre damage.

Storing the tyre pressure values and Infotainment display

Fig. 206
Button for storing the pressure values / example of the display: the system includes a tyre pressure change front left

Read and observe ! on page 164 first.

Procedure for storing the tyre pressure values

› Inflate all the tyres to the specified pressure.
› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Press the CAR button in Infotainment and then tap on the Tap → **Vehicle status**.
› Use the function surfaces ◁ ▷ Select the menu item *Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator*.
› Tap the function **SET** surface » Fig. 206.

In addition, follow the instructions that appear on the display.

A message in the display informs about the storage of the tyre pressure values.

Always save the tyre pressure values in the system if one of the following events occurs.

- Change of tyre pressure values.
- Change one or more wheels.

▸ Change in position of a wheel on the vehicle.
▸ The warning light in the instrument cluster.

WARNING

Before storing the pressures, the tyres must be inflated to the specified inflation pressure » page 192. If the wrong pressure valuesare stored, the system may not issue any warnings, even if the tyre pressure is too low.

CAUTION

Save the tyre pressure values every 10,000 km or 1x annually to ensure correct system functioning.

Note

When a warning light in the instrument cluster appears, the affected tyre can be displayed on the infotainment » Fig. 206.

Towing device and trailer

Hitch

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The maximum trailer draw bar load is **90 kg/h**. The draw bar load information on the type plate of the towing device is merely a test value for the towing device.

WARNING

Do not use the towing device if it is damaged or if there are parts missing.

Swinging in and out the tow bar

Fig. 207 **Tow bar: swing in and out**

Read and observe ! on page 165 first.

The pivotable tow bar cannot be removed. Its correct latching in both positions is indicated by a warning light.

Swing out the tow bar

› Pull the release lever A in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 207 » !. The tow bar pivots in the direction of arrow 2 and the warning light beside the handle **flashes red**.
› Allow the handle A to retract slowly and check if this is properly seated in the starting position.

› Press the tow bar in the direction of the arrow 2, until it audibly clicks into place. The warning light **lights green**.

Swivel tow bar
No trailer or other accessory is connected to the tow bar. A socket or adapter may not be plugged into the 13-pin socket.

› Pull the release lever A in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 207. The tow bar is unlocked and the warning light beside the handle **flashes red**.
› Allow the handle A to retract slowly and check if this is properly seated in the starting position.
› Swing in the tow bar under the bumper in the direction of arrow 3 until it clicks into place. The warning light **lights green**.

Check latching
If the tow bar is incorrectly locked, the warning light flashes red, after the ignition is switched on an acoustic signal is sounded and the following message appears in the instrument cluster.

WARNING
- Take care with the towing device - it may cause injury.
- Do not manipulate the release lever as long as a trailer or another accessory is coupled to the tow bar. The tow bar could come loose - risk of accident and injury.
- If the warning light does not turn green, or the tow bar cannot engage, then do not use the tow bar. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note
When not using the towing device, always swing the tow bar under the bumper.

Vertical load with mounted accessories

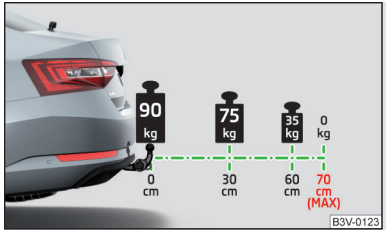

Fig. 208
Representation of the maximum length of the mounted accessories and the permissible total weight of the accessory depending on the load centre of gravity

Read and observe ! on page 165 first.

When using the accessories (e.g. bicycle carrier), the maximum length and the permissible total weight including load must be considered.

The **maximum length** of the mounted accessories (from the ball of the towing device) is **70 cm** » Fig. 208.

The total permitted weight of the accessories including load changes with increasing distance of the load centre of gravity from the ball head of the towing device.

Distance of the centre of gravity of the load from the ball head	Permissible total weight of the accessories, including load
0 cm	90 kg
30 cm	75 kg
60 cm	35 kg
70 cm	0 kg

CAUTION
Never exceed the permissible **total weight** of the accessories incl. load and **maximum length** of the accessories - risk of damage to the towing device.

Note
We recommend that you use accessories from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Using the towing device

Trailer (accessory) connect and disconnect

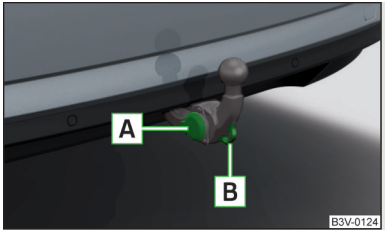

Fig. 209
Housing of the 13 pin socket, safety eyelet

Connect / disconnect
› Swing out the tow bar » page 165.

› Place the trailer (the accessory) onto the ball head.
› Plug the trailer (accessory) connector into the 13-pin socket A » Fig. 209. (If the trailer / accessories have a 7-pin connector, use a corresponding reduction piece from the ŠKODA Original Accessories).
› Suspend the breakaway cable of the trailer at the safety eyelet B (the breakaway cable must **sag** in all trailer settings in view of the vehicle).

Uncoupling takes place in reverse order.

Exterior mirrors
You should have additional exterior mirrors fitted if you are not able to see the traffic behind the trailer using the standard rear-view mirrors.

Headlights
The front of the vehicle may lift up when a trailer (accessory) is being towed and the headlights may dazzle other road users. Set the range of the headlights » page 64, *Operating the lights*[1].

Power supply of the trailer / accessory power system
In the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer (accessory), the trailer (accessories) is supplied with power from the vehicle (with ignition switched on and off).

With the engine switched off, the vehicle battery is discharged by the connected consumers.

At low charge state of the vehicle battery, the power supply to the trailer (accessories) is interrupted.

WARNING
- An improperly connected electrical installation of the trailer (accessories) may result in an accident or serious injury from electrical shock.
- Do not make any adjustments to the electrical installation of the vehicle and the trailer (accessories) - risk of an accident or serious injury from electrical shock.

WARNING (Continued)
- After the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer (accessory) the trailer / accessory lights should be checked for function.
- Never use the securing eye to tow - risk of accident!

CAUTION
- An improperly connected electrical installation of the trailer (accessories) can lead to the inoperability of the vehicle electronics.
- The total power consumption of all the connected consumers to the trailer power supply must not exceed 350 watts, otherwise there is a risk of damage to the electrical system of the vehicle.

Loading a trailer

Correct the **tyre inflation pressure** on the vehicle for "full load"» page 192.

Distribution of the cargo
Distribute the cargo in the trailer in such a way that heavy items are located as close to the trailer axle as possible. Secure the load from slipping.

The distribution of the weight is very poor if your vehicle is unladen and the trailer is laden. Nevertheless, maintain a particularly low speed if you cannot avoid driving with this combination.

WARNING
Sliding cargo can significantly adversely affect stability and driving safety - risk of accident!

Trailer load

The permissible trailer load must not be exceeded under any circumstances. ▶

[1] Applies to vehicles with xenon headlights.

Permissible trailer load - Superb

Engine	Gearbox	Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)		Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)
		Gradients of up to 12 %	Gradients of up to 8%[a)]	
1.4 l/92 kW TSI	MG	1600	1800	680
1.4 l/110 kW TSI ACT	MG	1600	1900	690
	MG 4x4	1800	2000	750
	DSG	1600	1900	710
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	MG	1600	1900	690
	DSG	1600	1900	700
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	MG	1800	2000	730
	DSG	1800	2000	740
2.0 l/162 kW TSI	DSG	2000	2000	750
2.0 l/206 kW TSI	DSG 4x4	2200	2200	750
1.6 l/88 kW TDI CR	MG	1500	1800	730
	MG (Green Line)	1500	1800	740
	DSG	1500	1800	740
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	MG	2000	2000	740
	MG 4x4	2200	2200	750
	DSG	2000	2000	750
2.0 l/130 kW TDI CR	DSG	2000	2000	750
2.0 l/140 kW TDI CR	MG	2000	2000	750
	DSG	2000	2100	750
	DSG 4x4	2200	2200	750

[a)] Only valid for some countries.

Permissible trailer load - Superb Estate

Engine	Gearbox	Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)		Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)
		Gradients of up to 12 %	Gradients of up to 8%[a)]	
1.4 l/92 kW TSI	MG	1600	1800	690
1.4 l/110 kW TSI ACT	MG	1600	1900	700
	MG 4x4	1800	2000	750
	DSG	1600	1900	720

Engine	Gearbox	Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)		Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)
		Gradients of up to 12 %	Gradients of up to 8%[a]	
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	MG	1600	1900	700
	DSG	1600	1900	710
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	MG	1800	2000	740
	DSG	1800	2000	750
2.0 l/162 kW TSI	DSG	2000	2000	750
2.0 l/206 kW TSI	DSG 4x4	2200	2200	750
1.6 l/88 kW TDI CR	MG	1500	1800	740
	MG (Green Line)	1500	1800	750
	DSG	1500	1800	750
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	MG	2000	2000	750
	MG 4x4	2200	2200	750
	DSG	2000	2000	750
2.0 l/130 kW TDI CR	DSG	2000	2000	750
2.0 l/140 kW TDI CR	MG	2000	2000	750
	DSG	2000	2100	750
	DSG 4x4	2200	2200	750

[a] Only valid for some countries.

WARNING

The maximum vertical load and the maximum trailer load must not be exceeded - there is risk of accident!

Towing a trailer

Driving speed

For safety reasons, do not drive with the trailer any faster than 100 km/h (when the towing vehicle is a passenger car of category M1) or 80 km/h (when the towing vehicle is a truck of category N1).

Immediately reduce your speed as soon as even the slightest swaying of the trailer is detected. Never attempt to stop the trailer from "swaying" by accelerating.

Brakes

Apply the brakes in good time! If the trailer is fitted with a **trailer brake**, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.

On downhill sections shift down a gear in good time to also use the engine as a brake.

WARNING

Always drive particularly carefully with the trailer.

CAUTION

With frequent towing, the vehicle is excessively loaded so this must also be checked between service intervals.

Anti-theft alarm system

The alarm is triggered if, with a vehicle with activated anti-theft alarm (hereinafter only warning system), the electrical connection to the trailer (accessory) is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm system before a trailer (accessory) is coupled or uncoupled » page 55.

Conditions for including a trailer (accessory) in the anti-theft alarm system.

- ✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with an anti-theft alarm system and a towing device.
- ✓ The trailer (accessory) is electrically connected to the towing vehicle by means of the trailer socket.
- ✓ The electrical system of the vehicle and trailer (accessory) is functional.
- ✓ The vehicle is locked and the anti-theft alarm system is activated.
- ✓ The trailer (accessory) is not equipped with LED taillights.

General Maintenance

Care and maintenance

Service work, adjustments and technical alterations

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO must be observed when carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

WARNING

- Adjustments, repairs and technical changes to the vehicle are to be carried out only by a specialist garage. Improperly conducted work (including work on the electronic components and their software) can cause faults - there is a risk of accidents and increased wear on parts!
- We advise you only to use ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.
- ŠKODA AUTO cannot assume any liability for products which have not been approved by ŠKODA even though these may be products with a type approval or have been approved by a nationally recognised testing laboratory.

Vehicle operating under different weather conditions

Read and observe ! on page 171 first.

If you would like to operate your vehicle in countries other than those with its intended weather conditions, you should contact a ŠKODA Partner. They will advise you if certain precautions need to be taken to ensure the full functioning of the vehicle or to prevent damage (e.g. coolant / battery replacement etc.).

Statutory checks

Read and observe ! on page 171 first.

Many countries have legislation requiring the operational reliability and roadworthiness and/or exhaust gas properties of a vehicle to be tested at specific intervals. These tests can be carried out by workshops or testing stations that have been legally authorized for this purpose.

Upon request, the ŠKODA Service Partners can prepare the vehicle for the tests or have this carried out.

Even if you want to take your vehicle to an officially approved test centre for prior checking in preparation for a legally required test, we recommend that you consult the service consultant of your ŠKODA Service Partner beforehand.

ŠKODA Service Partner

Read and observe ! on page 171 first.

All ŠKODA Service Partners operate according to the most recent guidelines and instructions from ŠKODA AUTO . All service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and at the appropriate quality. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

We therefore advise you to have all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to your vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

ŠKODA Original parts

Read and observe ! on page 171 first.

We recommend the use of ŠKODA Original Parts for your vehicle, as these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO. These parts correspond exactly to the ŠKODA AUTO regulations and are identical to the parts used in series production.

ŠKODA AUTO is able to warrant the safety, suitability, and long life of these products.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after sale in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement.

ŠKODA Original accessories

Read and observe ! on page 171 first.

If you wish to fit accessories to your vehicle, you should remember the following.

We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. ŠKODA AUTO has selected such accessories to ensure that they are reliable, safe and suitable for your particular vehicle. Although we constantly monitor the market, we are not able to assess or vouch for other products, even though in some instances such parts may have operational approval or may have been approved by a nationally recognised testing laboratory.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories for a period of 2 years after installation or delivery in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement or any other agreements.

Spoiler

Read and observe ! on page 171 first.

! WARNING

If your vehicle is equipped with an original spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the spoiler on the boot lid, the following instructions must be observed - otherwise there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries!

- The vehicle must always be equipped with a spoiler on the front bumper only in combination with the corresponding spoiler on the boot lid.
- This kind of spoiler cannot be left on the front bumper either on its own, in combination with another spoiler not on the luggage compartment lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
- We recommend that you consult the ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.
- Improperly conducted work on the spoilers of your vehicle may result in malfunction.

Component protection

Read and observe ! on page 171 first.

Some electronic vehicle components (such as the instrument cluster) are factory-equipped with component protection. This ensures the functional limitation of these components in a non-legitimate installation in another vehicle (e.g. after a theft) or operation outside the vehicle.

Airbags

Read and observe ! on page 171 first.

! WARNING

- Modifications, repairs and technical alterations that have been carried out unprofessionally can cause damage and operational faults, and can also seriously impair the effectiveness of the airbag system – risk of accident and fatal injury!
- A change to the vehicle's wheel suspension, including the use of non-approved wheels and tyre combinations, can alter the functioning of the airbag system - risk of accident and fatal injury!

WARNING

- No changes may be made to parts of the airbag system, the front bumper and the body.
- Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Do not manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- If the airbag is triggered, the airbag system must be exchanged.

WARNING

The airbag system operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). The resulting damage can negatively affect the function of the airbag system - there is a risk of accidents and fatal injuries! The following guidelines must be observed.

- Any work on the front doors and their door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Never drive with removed inner door panels or openings in the panels.

Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles

Read and observe ! on page 171 first.

All new ŠKODA vehicles are 95% recyclable.

Service intervals

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The service interval display in the display of the instrument cluster will remind you to carry out every service stipulated by the manufacturer at the right time in order to prevent you from forgetting them » page 45.

The completion of services can be verified through the printed verification from the digital service schedule and the respective receipts.

The specified service intervals are tailored to normal operating conditions.

In the case of difficult operating conditions, it is necessary to have some service work performed before the date of the next service or between the specified service intervals. This applies mainly to the cleaning or the replacement of the air filter insert in regions with heavy dust pollution as well as checking and replacing the toothed belt, but also to vehicles with diesel particle filters, which can put greater strain on the engine oil.

The following is understood under difficult conditions:

- Fuel containing sulphur.
- Frequent short trips.
- Longer periods of engine idling (e.g. taxis).
- Operation in areas with heavy dust pollution.
- Frequent trailer operation.
- Predominantly stop-and-go traffic as is often the case in city driving, for example.
- Operation predominantly during winter.

You will be told at the specialist garage whether the operating conditions of your vehicle may make it necessary for service work to be carried out between the normal service intervals.

Different service charges may apply from the particular scope of work required, depending on the vehicle type and equipment and the status of your vehicle.

Note

- The customer is responsible for covering the cost of all services including changing or replenishing the oil, even during the warranty period, unless stated otherwise in the ŠKODA AUTO. warranty terms or other agreements.
- You will be informed about the current service scopes for the particular service work by the specialist garage.

Overview of service intervals

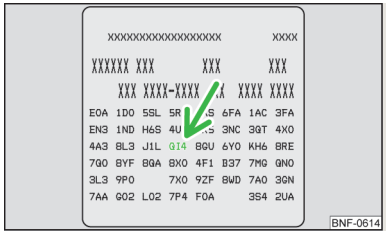

Fig. 210
Vehicle data: service Interval

The service interval specified by the manufacturer is indicated on the data sticker » Fig. 210 in the service schedule and in the vehicle.

One of the following service intervals applies to your vehicle:
- Fixed service interval QI1.
- Fixed service interval QI2.
- Fixed service interval QI3.
- Fixed service interval QI4.
- Variable service interval QI6.

In order to operate a vehicle with a flexible service interval, it is necessary that only the prescribed engine oil is used.

If this engine oil is not available, the oil change is subject to a fixed service interval. In this case, the vehicle **must** be changed to the fixed service interval.

Note

- The corresponding motor oil specifications » page 185.
- For vehicles with flexible service interval QI6, you can initiate a return to the fixed service interval or back to the flexible service interval to be performed by a specialist garage.

Fixed service intervals QI1 - QI4

Oil change service	QI1	Every 5,000 km or every 1 year[a].
	QI2	Every 7,500 km or every 1 year[a].
	QI3	Every 10,000 km or every 1 year[a].
	QI4	Every 15,000 km or every 1 year.[a]
Inspection[b] Variant 1	QI1 - QI4	After the first 30,000 km or 2 years[a], then every 30,000 km or every 1 year[a].
Inspection[b] Variant 2		Every 15,000 km or every 1 year.[a]
Inspection[b] Variant 3		Every 10,000 km or every 1 year[a].
Brake fluid change	QI1 - QI4	First change after 3 years, then every 2 years,

[a] (whichever comes first).
[b] For information about the valid version for your vehicle, please contact a ŠKODA partner.

WARNING

The brake fluid must always be changed after the first 3 years and then every 2 years. Longer intervals between changing the brake fluid can cause vapour bubbles to form in the brake system on sharp braking. This can impair the efficiency of the brakes – risk of accident!

Note

For diesel operation with a high sulphur content, the oil must be changed every 7,500 km. Ask your specialist garage for information on the countries where diesel fuel has a high sulphur content.

Flexible service interval QI6

The oil change service intervals depend on the intensity at which the vehicle is driven and the local conditions in which the vehicle is used. For example, your vehicle is subjected to different loads when driven over short distances than when driven over long distances. The intervals are therefore **flexible**.

Oil change service	According to the service interval display (at the latest after 30,000 km or 2 years[a]).
Inspection[b] Variant 1	After the first 30,000 km or 2 years[a], then every 30,000 km or every 1 year[a].
Inspection[b] Variant 2	Every 15,000 km or every 1 year.
Brake fluid change	First change after 3 years, then every 2 years,

[a] (whichever comes first).
[b] For information about the valid version for your vehicle, please contact a ŠKODA partner.

WARNING

The brake fluid must always be changed after the first 3 years and then every 2 years. Longer intervals between changing the brake fluid can cause vapour bubbles to form in the brake system on sharp braking. This can impair the efficiency of the brakes – risk of accident!

Digital Service Plan

A specialist garage does not confirm the corresponding service evidence in this Owner´s Manual, but in the service information system called Digital Service Plan.

Therefore, we recommend that you always print the respective Service Certificate as evidence of the service work carried out.

Benefits of the digital service plan

- High level of security when it comes to the manipulation of the event entries.
- Transparent documentation of service work carried out.
- Protection against loss or damage of the event entries – you receive a complete service-verification if required.
- Optional; request of complete verification in electronic form.
- You can have the vehicle serviced in any specialist garage (also abroad) – the database is accessible worldwide.
- Increased transparency when purchasing a used vehicle due to event entries being stored centrally.
- The system entries support you in the enforcement of obligations under the ŠKODA extended warranty and mobility guarantee.

Cleaning and care

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Regular and thorough care retains the value of your vehicle.

When using the care product, always observe the instructions on the packaging. We recommend that you use the preservative from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.

WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the vehicle care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - there is a danger of poisoning!

CAUTION

- Do not use any insect sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar cleaning products – risk of damaging the paintwork surface.
- Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents - there is a danger of damaging the material that is to be cleaned.

Note

We recommend that the vehicle is cleaned and cared for by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

Washing the vehicle

Read and observe and on page 175 first.

The best way to protect your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is frequent washing.

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain on the paintwork of your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It is essential to also thoroughly clean the underside of the vehicle at the end of the winter.

Washing by hand

Wash the vehicle from top to bottom, if necessary, wash using a soft sponge or washing mitt and plenty of water with appropriate detergents. Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals.

Use a different sponge for the wheels, door sills and lower vehicle areas.

Give the vehicle a good rinse after washing it and dry it off using a chamois leather.

Automatic car washes
The usual precautionary measures must be taken before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system (e.g. closing the windows and the sliding/tilting roof etc.).

If your vehicle is fitted with any particular attached parts, such as a spoiler, roof rack system, two-way radio aerial etc., it is best to consult the operator of the car wash system beforehand.

After an automatic wash with wax treatment, the blades of the wipers should be cleaned with cleaning agents specially designed for the purpose, and then degreased.

Pressure washer
When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, the instructions for use of the equipment must be observed. This particularly applies to information with respect to the **pressure** and **spray distance** from the vehicle surface.

Maintain a sufficiently large distance to the parking aid sensors and soft materials such as rubber hoses or insulation material » !.

! WARNING
- When washing your vehicle in the winter: Water and ice in the braking system can affect the braking efficiency – risk of accident!
- Take care when cleaning the underbody or the inside of the wheel wells - there is a risk of injury on sharp metal parts!

! CAUTION
- Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight, do not exert pressure on the body while washing. The temperature of the washing water should be max. 60 ° C - otherwise there is a risk of damaging the vehicle paint.
- Before driving through a car wash, fold in the exterior mirrors - there is a risk of damage.

! CAUTION
Washing the vehicle using pressure washers
- The foils should not be washed using pressure washers - there is a risk of damage .
- Do not aim the water jet directly at the lock cylinders or the door or opening joints when washing the vehicle in the winter – there is a risk of freezing.
- The sensors of the parking aid can be sprayed only for a short time and there must be a minimum distance of 10 cm - there is a risk of damage.
- When washing the vehicle, do not point the water jet directly at the tow bar or the trailer socket - there is a risk of seal damage or washing out the grease.

Caring for the outside of the vehicle

Read and observe ! and ! on page 175 first.

Vehicle component	Facts of the matter	Remedy
Paint	Spilled fuel	Clear water, cloth, (clean as soon as possible)
	No water droplets form on the paint	Use hard wax (min. twice a year), apply wax to clean and dry body
	Matt paint	Use polish, then preserve (if the polish does not contain any preservative ingredients)
Plastic parts	Soiling	Clear water, cloth / sponge provided for the intended cleaning agent
Chromed and anodized parts	Soiling	Clear water, cloth or cleaning agent provided for this purpose, then polish with a soft dry cloth
Foils	Soiling	Soft sponge and mild soap solution[a)]
Windows and external mirror glass	Soiling	Wash with clean water and dry using the intended cloth
Headlights/lights	Soiling	Soft sponge and mild soap solution[a)]
Reversing camera	Soiling	Wash with clean water and dry with a soft cloth
	Snow / ice	Hand brush / de-icer
Door lock cylinder	Snow / ice	De-icer
Wiper / wiper blades	Soiling	Glass cleaner, sponge or cloth
Wheels	Soiling	Clear water, then coat with appropriate conservation solution

a) Mild soap solution = 2 tablespoons of natural soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

The **jack** is maintenance-free. If necessary, the moving parts of the jack should be lubricated with a suitable lubricant.

The **towing device** is maintenance-free. Coat the ball head of the towing device with a suitable grease whenever necessary.

Protection of hollow spaces
All the hollow spaces on your vehicle which are at risk from corrosion are protected for life by a layer of protective wax applied in the factory.

If any small amount of wax flow out of the cavities at high temperatures, these must be removed with a plastic scraper and the stains cleaned using a petroleum cleaner.

Underbody protection
The underside of your vehicle is already permanently protected by the factory against chemical and mechanical influences.

We recommend having the protective coating underneath the vehicle and the chassis checked — preferably before the beginning of winter and at the end of winter.

Life of the foils
Environmental influences (e.g. sunlight, humidity, air pollution, rockfall) affect the life of the foils. Films will age and become brittle – this is entirely normal: this is not a fault.

Sunlight may also affect the strength of the film colour.

When transporting a load on the roof rack (e.g. roof box or similar), there is an increased risk of film damage (e.g. of chipping from the secured load).

! CAUTION

- **Vehicle paint**
  - Damaged areas should be repaired as soon as possible.
  - Do not treat painted parts with or hard waxes.
  - Do not polish the paintwork in a dusty environment - risk of paint scratches.
  - Do not apply any paint care products to door seals or window guides.
- **Plastic parts**
  - Do not use paint care products.
- **Chromed and anodised parts**
  - Do not polish the chrome parts in a dusty environment - risk of surface scratches.
- **Foils**
  The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is a risk of foil damage.
  - Do not clean with dirty cloths or sponges.
  - To remove ice and snow, do not use a scraper or other means.
  - Do not polish the foils
  - Do not use a pressure washer to clean the foils
- **Rubber seals**
  - Do not treat the door seals and window guides with any products - the protective lacquer layer could be affected.
- **Windows and external mirror glass**
  - Do not clean the inside of the windows with sharp objects - there is a risk of damage to the filaments or glass antenna.
  - Do not use a cloth, which was used to polish the body - this could soil the window and reduce visibility.
- **Headlights/lights**
  - Do not dry off the headlights/lights, do not use sharp objects - there is a risk of damage to the protective coating and subsequent cracking of the headlight glass.
- **Reversing camera**
  The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is a risk of camera damage.
  - Do not remove snow / ice with warm / hot water.
  - To wash, never use a pressure washer or steam jet.
  - For cleaning, do not use abrasive cleaners.
- **Door lock cylinder**
  - Make sure that as little water as possible gets into the locking cylinder when washing the vehicle - there is a risk of freezing the lock cylinder!
- **Wheels**
  - Heavy contamination of the wheels can affect the balance of the wheels - this can result in vibrations and, under some circumstances, can cause premature wear of the steering wheel.

Removing ice and snow from the windows

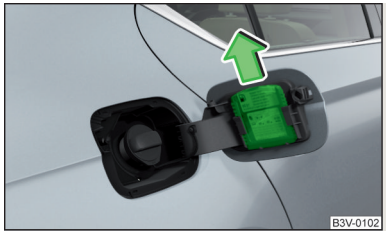

Fig. 211
Installation location of the ice scraper, removing the scraper

Read and observe ! and ! on page 175 first.

Use a plastic ice scraper for removing snow and ice from the windows and mirrors. This can be on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

› Open the fuel filler flap and slide the scraper in the direction of arrow » Fig. 211.

! CAUTION

▪ Move the scraper in one direction only, otherwise there is a risk of damage to the glass surface.
▪ Do not remove snow / ice on the surface that is soiled (e.g. pea gravel, sand, road salt) - there is a risk of damaging the surface.
▪ Remove snow / ice carefully, otherwise there is a risk of damaging the labels that have been fitted by the factory.

Caring for the interior

Read and observe ! and ! on page 175 first.

Vehicle component	Facts of the matter	Remedy
Natural leather / Artificial leather Alcantara® Fabric	Dust, surface contamination	Vacuum cleaner
	Pollution (fresh)	Water, slightly damp cotton / wool cloth, if necessary, mild soap solution[a], then wipe with a soft cloth
	Stubborn stains	Specially prepared detergent
	Care (natural leather)	Treat the leather periodically with a suitable leather protector and use a care cream with light blocker and impregnation after each cleaning.
	Care (Alcantara® / fabric)	Remove stubborn hairs using a "cleaning glove" Remove tubers on fabrics with a brush
Plastic parts	Soiling	Water, slightly damp cloth or sponge, or cleaning agent provided for this purpose
Windows	Soiling	Wash with clean water and dry using the intended cloth
Covers of electrically heated seats	Soiling	Specially provided cleaning agent
Seat belts » !	Soiling	Soft cloth and mild soap solution[a]

[a] Mild soap solution = 2 tablespoons of natural soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

! WARNING

▪ Never clean the seat belts chemically as chemical cleaning products could destroy the fabric.
▪ Air fresheners and scents can be hazardous to heath when the temperature inside the vehicle is high.

CAUTION

- **Natural leather / artificial leather / Alcantara® / fabric**
  - In lengthy periods in bright sunlight, it might be sensible to cover these materials in order to avoid bleaching.
  - Fresh stains (e.g. from pens, lipstick, shoe polish etc.) should be removed as soon as possible.
  - Ensure that no part of the leather is soaked through during cleaning and that no water gets into the seams.
  - Do not clean the roof panelling with a brush – risk of damage to the surface of the panelling.
  - Do not use solvents, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover or similar agents on Alcantara® seat upholstery.
  - Some clothing fabrics (e.g. dark denim) do not have sufficient colour fastness - this may leave evident marks on upholstery. This is not a defect in the fabric.
  - Sharp objects on garments (e.g. zips, rivets, sharp- edged belts) can damage the upholstery fabrics in the vehicle. Such damage cannot be subsequently recognised as a justified complaint.
- **Plastic parts**
  - Do not attach scents or air fresheners to the dashboard – there is a risk of damage to the dashboard.
- **Windows**
  - Do not attach any stickers to the filaments or glass antenna - there is risk of damage.
- **Covers of electrically heated seats**
  - Do not clean with water or other liquids - there is a risk of damage to the heating system.
  - Do not dry by switching on the heating.
- **Seat belts**
  - Allow to dry before rolling up the seat belts.

Note

During vehicle use, the leather and Alcantara® parts may show minor changes (e.g. folds, discolouration).

Inspecting and replenishing

Fuel

Introduction

Fig. 212
Stickers with prescribed fuel

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The correct fuel for your vehicle is specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 212.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about **66 litres**, including a reserve of approx. **6 litres**.

WARNING

Fuel vapours are explosive - can be fatal!

CAUTION

- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.
- Immediately remove any fuel that has spilled onto the vehicle's paintwork – risk of paint damage.
- If you would like to operate your vehicle in countries other than those with its intended weather conditions, please contact a ŠKODA Partner. They will tell you whether the fuel specified by the manufacturer is offered in the accompanying country or whether it is permissible to operate the vehicle with another fuel.

Petrol and diesel refuelling

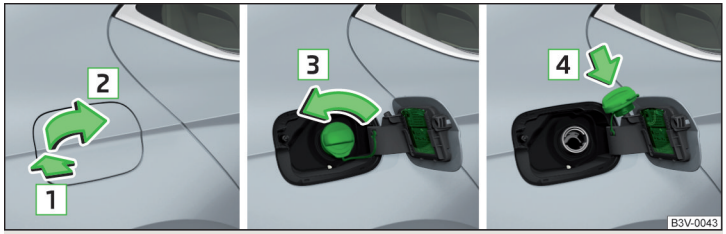

Fig. 213 **Open fuel filler flap / unscrew tank cap / place the tank cap on the fuel filler flap**

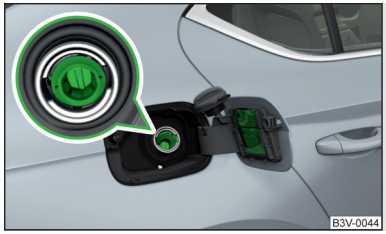

Fig. 214
Fuel filler tube on vehicles with diesel engines

Read and observe ! and ! on page 179 first.

Perform the refuelling under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle is unlocked.
✓ The ignition is switched off.
✓ The auxiliary heating and ventilation is switched off.

› Press the fuel filler flap in direction of arrow 1 and fold in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 213.
› Unscrew the tank cap in the direction of arrow 3.
› Remove the tank cap and place in the recess on top of the fuel filler flap in the direction of arrow 4.
› Insert the pump nozzle into the fuel filler neck as far as it will go, and refuel.

The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time. Not continue refuelling.

› Remove the pump nozzle from the fuel filler neck and put it back in the pump.
› Place the filler cap onto the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it securely engages 3.
› Close the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

Incorrect refuelling guard on vehicles with diesel engines
The fuel filler tube on vehicles with diesel engines has been fitted with an incorrect refuelling guard » Fig. 214.

If the diesel pump nozzle does not sit directly in the fuel filler tube, move it to and fro with slight pressure to insert it correctly.

The diameter of the diesel pump nozzle can be identical to that of the petrol pump nozzle in some countries. When driving in these countries, the incorrect fuelling protection should be removed by a specialist company.

Unleaded petrol

Read and observe ! and ! on page 179 first.

The correct fuel for your vehicle is specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 212 *on page 179*.

The vehicle can only be operated using **unleaded petrol** that complies with the standard **EN 228**[1)] contains and **maximum** 10% bioethanol **(E10)**.

Prescribed fuel 95 / min. 92 and 93 RON / ROZ
We recommend using petrol **95** RON.

Optionally, the petrol **92** or. **93** RON can be used (slight power loss, a slightly increased fuel consumption).

In an **emergency** petrol **91** RON can be used (slight power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption) » !.

Unleaded petrol min. 95 RON / ROZ
Use petrol min. **95** RON.

In an **emergency** petrol **91**, **92** or **93** RON can be used (slight loss, a slightly increased fuel consumption) » !.

[1)] In Germany also DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded petrol with octane number 91 or 95 or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded petrol with octane number 95 and 98.

Prescribed petrol 98/(95) RON / ROZ
We recommend using petrol **98** RON.

Optionally, petrol **95** RON can be used (slight power loss, a slightly increased fuel consumption).

In an **emergency** petrol **91**, **92** or **93** RON can be used (slight loss, a slightly increased fuel consumption) » !.

! CAUTION
The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is a risk of engine damage and damage to the exhaust system.
- If gasoline is used which is lower than the prescribed octane number, then continue driving at medium engine speeds and minimum engine load. Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.
- Petrol with a **lower** Octane count than **91** should not even be used in an emergency!
- If a fuel other than unleaded fuel which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. leaded petrol) is put in the tank by mistake, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition.

! CAUTION
Petrol additives (additives)
- Unleaded petrol in accordance with the EN 228 standard[1] meets all the conditions for a smooth-running engine. Therefore, we recommend that you do not add any fuel additives to the petrol - there is a risk of engine damage or damage to the exhaust system.
- **The following additives and auxiliary products may not be used - there is a risk of engine damage or damage to the exhaust system!**
  - Additives with metal components (metallic additives), in particular with manganese and iron content.
  - Fuels with metallic content (e.g. LRP - lead replacement petrol).

i Note
- Unleaded petrol that has a higher octane number than that required by the engine can be used without limitations.
- The use of petrol with an octane rating higher than **95** RON in does not result in either a noticeable increase in power nor lower fuel consumption in vehicles for which unleaded petrol **95/min 92 or 93** RON is specified.
- On vehicles using prescribed petrol of **min. 95** RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** RON can increase the power and reduce fuel consumption.

Diesel fuel

Read and observe ! and ! on page 179 first.

The correct fuel for your vehicle is specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 212 *on page 179*.

The vehicle can only be operated using **diesel fuel** that complies with the standard **EN 590**[2] and contains a **maximum** 7% biodiesel **(B7)**[3].

Operating under different weather conditions
Use only diesel in accordance with the current or expected weather conditions. Ask the petrol station personnel whether the diesel fuel offered corresponds to these conditions.

! CAUTION
The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is a risk of engine damage and damage to the exhaust system.
- If a different fuel other than diesel fuel, which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. petrol) is put into the tank, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition!
- The biofuel **RME** must not be used!

[1] In Germany also DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded petrol with octane number 91 or 95 or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded petrol with octane number 95 and 98.
[2] In Germany DIN 51628, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in Russia GOST R 52368-2005 / EN 590: 2004, in India IS 1460 / Bharat IV or in an emergency IS 1460 / Bharat III.
[3] In Germany according to the DIN 52638 standard, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in France EN 590.

CAUTION

Diesel fuel additives

- The diesel fuel in accordance with the prescribed standards meets all the conditions for a smooth running engine. Therefore, we recommend that you do not add any fuel additives to the diesel - - there is a risk of engine damage or damage to the exhaust system.

AdBlue® And its refilling

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

In order to reduce pollutant emissions from vehicles with diesel engines and the SCR catalyst, a urea - AdBlue® solution is injected into the exhaust system.

Only use AdBlue® that corresponds to the **standard** ISO 22241-1. Do not add additives to AdBlue®.

The AdBlue® **consumption** depends on driving style, the operating temperature of the system and on the weather conditions.

The AdBlue®-**tank filling** is about **13 litres**.

WARNING

AdBlue® can cause skin, eye and respiratory irritation. If your eyes or skin come into contact with the AdBlue® fluid, immediately wash the affected area for a few minutes long with a lot of water. Seek medical assistance if required.

CAUTION

AdBlue® attacks the surface of some materials (e.g. as painted parts, plastics, fabrics). Clean the areas affected with AdBlue® using a damp cloth and plenty of cold water. Remove any dried AdBlue® with warm water and a sponge.

Note

- The AdBlue® solution freezes at a temperature of -11° C and lower. The system has a heater to ensure the operability at low temperatures.
- We recommend purchasing AdBlue® refill bottles from the ŠKODA original parts.
- The working life of the AdBlue® solution is 4 years. Thereafter the solution must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- AdBlue® is a registered trademark of the VDA. AdBlue® is also known as AUS 32 (Aqueous Urea Solution) or DEF (Diesel Exhaust Fluid).

Check level

Read and observe ! and ! on page 182 first.

The AdBlue® level is automatically monitored.

If the available travel distance that can be completed with the remaining AdBlue® tank capacity drops to about 2400 km, the warning appears on the instrument cluster and a request for replenishment of AdBlue® appears.

An indication also appears in the instrument cluster showing the maximum and minimum AdBlue® tank capacity.

If the available travel distance that can be driven with the existing AdBlue® - tank capacity drops down to 0 km, **then no motor start is possible**.

The distance which can still be driven with the remaining AdBlue®, can be determined using the travel data» page 43.

AdBlue® refill

Fig. 215 **Open fuel filler flap / unscrew tank cap / place the tank cap on the fuel filler flap**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 182 first.

We recommend that AdBlue® is refilled by a specialist garage. If necessary, you can refill this yourself using a refill or a fuel nozzle at a petrol station.

We recommend when refilling using refill bottles that you use refill bottles from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

When adding AdBlue® take note of the minimum and maximum AdBlue® tank capacity shown in the display of the instrument cluster » page 38.

Refill AdBlue® under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.
✓ The ignition is switched off.

Refilling

› Press the fuel filler flap in direction of arrow 1 and fold in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 215.
› Unscrew the tank cap in the direction of arrow 3.
› Remove the tank cap and place in the recess on top of the fuel filler flap in the direction of arrow 4.
› Refill AdBlue® in the neck A by means of a refill or a fuel nozzle refill (follow the instructions on the container or the instructions of the petrol station operator).

The AdBlue® - tank is full when no AdBlue® flows from the refill bottle or as soon as the correctly operated pump cuts out for the first time. Do not continue refilling AdBlue®.

› After refilling AdBlue®put the cap on the fuel filler neck and turn in the opposite direction of the arrow 3 until it engages.
› Close the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

Before continuing your journey, switch on just the ignition for 30 s so that the refilling can be recognized by the system. Only then start the engine.

Engine compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

Never cover the engine with additional insulation material (e.g. with a cover) – risk of fire!

WARNING

When working in the engine compartment, the following instructions must be observed - risk of injury or fire. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area!

WARNING

Instructions before beginning work in the engine compartment

- Stop the engine and remove the ignition key, on vehicles with the KESSY system, open the driver's door.
- Switch on the parking brake.
- For vehicles with **manual transmission** the lever into the neutral position. On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- Never open the bonnet if you can see steam or coolant flowing out of the engine compartment – risk of scalding! Wait until the steam or coolant has stopped escaping.

WARNING

Information for working in the engine room

- Keep everyone away from the engine compartment.
- Do not touch any hot engine parts – risk of burns!
- Never touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan suddenly switch on approx. 10 minutes after switching off the ignition!
- Do not smoke or use open flames in the vicinity of the engine.
- Do not leave any items (e.g. cloths or tools) in the engine compartment. This presents a fire hazard and the risk of engine damage.
- Read and observe the information and warning instructions on the fluid containers.

WARNING

Information for working in the engine compartment with the engine running

- If it is necessary to work on the engine compartment with the engine running, then observe the **rotating engine parts and electrical plants** - it can be fatal!
- Never touch the electric wiring on the ignition system.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system, particularly on the vehicle's battery.

CAUTION

Refill only operating fluids of the correct specification - danger of damaging the vehicle!

Note

- Fluids with the proper specifications can be purchased from the ŠKODA Original Accessories or from the ŠKODA Genuine Parts ranges.
- We recommend you have the battery replaced by a specialist garage.

Opening and closing the bonnet

Fig. 216 **Opening the bonnet**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 183 first.

Open flap

› Make sure that the windscreen wiper arms are not folded away from the windscreen - there is a risk of damage to the bonnet.
› Open the driver's door and pull the unlocking lever below the dashboard in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 216.
› Press the release lever in the direction of the arrow 2 and the bonnet is unlocked.
› Hold the bonnet and lift up until it is held open by the pressurised gas spring.

Close the bonnet lid

› Pull the bonnet lid down far enough to overcome the force of the pressurised gas spring.
› From around 20 cm, lightly push the bonnet lid closed until it securely engages.

If the bonnet lid is not properly closed, the display of the instrument cluster will show this.

WARNING

- Never drive if the bonnet is open - could cause an accident!
- Make sure that when closing the engine compartment lid, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!

Engine compartment overview

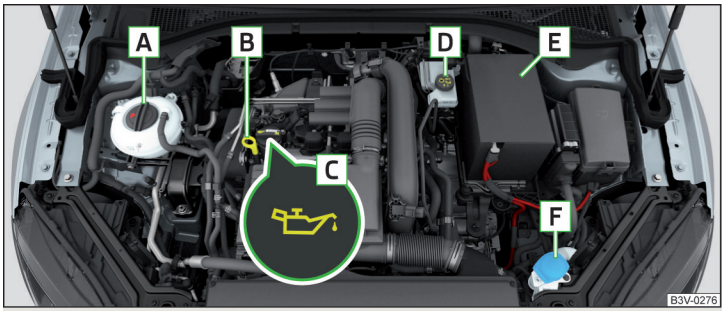

Fig. 217 **Arrangement example in the engine compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 183 first.

A	Coolant expansion reservoir	187
B	Engine oil dipstick	186
C	Engine oil filler opening	186
D	Brake fluid reservoir	188
E	Vehicle battery	188
F	Windscreen washer fluid reservoir	185

Windscreen washer fluid

Fig. 218 **Windscreen washer fluid reservoir**

Read and observe and on page 183 first.

The installation location of the container support can differ depending on the type of engine » Fig. 218.

The capacity of the reservoir A is about 3.1 litres or about 4.7 litres on vehicles that have a headlight cleaning system. The contents of the container B are approximately 3.7 litres.

Use a suitable windscreen washer fluid in accordance with the current or expected weather conditions. We recommend that you use accessories from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

CAUTION

- If the vehicle is equipped with a headlight cleaning system, then only use windscreen washer fluid types that do not attack the polycarbonate coating of the headlights - otherwise there is a risk of damage to headlights.
- Do not remove the filter from the windscreen washer fluid reservoir when replenishing it with liquid otherwise the liquid transportation system can become contaminated, which can cause the windscreen washer system to malfunction.

Engine oil

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The engine has been factory-filled with a high-grade oil that can be use throughout the year - except in extreme climate zones.

We therefore recommend that the oil change is carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

The engine oil should be changed after specified service intervals » page 173.

Depending on the driving style and operating conditions, the engine uses some oil (up to 0.5 l / 1 000 km). Consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5 000 km.

WARNING

The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 183.

CAUTION

Do not add additives to the engine oil - risk of engine damage.

Note

We recommend that you use oils from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Specification

Read and observe and on page 185 first.

The specifications (VW standards) stated in the following can be indicated separately or together with other specifications on the bottle.

Vehicles with variable service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification
1.4 l / 92 kW TSI	VW 504 00
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	
2.0 l/162, 206 kW TSI	

Diesel engines	Specification
1.6 ltr. / 88 kW TDI CR	VW 507 00
2.0 l/110, 130, 140 kW TDI CR	

Vehicles with fixed service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification
1.4 l / 92 kW TSI	VW 502 00
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	
2.0 l/162, 206 kW TSI	

Diesel engines	Specification
1.6 ltr. / 88 kW TDI CR	VW 507 00
2.0 l/110, 130, 140 kW TDI CR	

Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines **without a DPF**.

CAUTION

- If no prescribed engine oil is available, then **max. 0.5 l** oil of the following specifications can be refilled.
  - Petrol engines: ACEA A3/ACEA B4 or API SN, (API SM);
  - Diesel engines: ACEA C3 or API CJ-4.

Check and refill

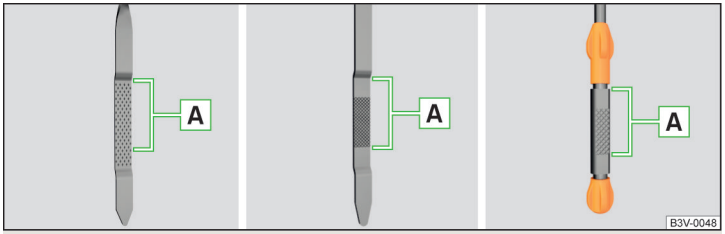

Fig. 219 **Dipstick variants**

Read and observe and on page 185 first.

Check the oil under the following conditions and refill.

✓ The vehicle is standing on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine operating temperature is reached.
✓ The engine is turned off.

Checking the level

› Wait a few minutes until the engine oil flows back into the oil trough.
› Remove the dipstick and wipe with a clean cloth.
› Push the dipstick to the stop and pull out again.
› Read the oil level and push in the dipstick.

The oil level must be in range A » Fig. 219. If the oil level is below the range A, refill the oil.

Refilling

› Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening C » Fig. 217 *on page 184*.
› Replenish the oil in portions of 0.5 litres in accordance with the correct specifications » page 185.
› Check the oil level .
› Screw the lid of the engine oil filler closed carefully.

CAUTION

- The oil level must never be below the range A » Fig. 219 – risk of damage to the motor as well as the exhaust system.
- If it is not possible to refill with oil or the oil level is above the range A, do not continue driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Note

Too low engine oil level is shown in the instrument cluster by the warning light illuminating and also indicated by the message » page 38. Nevertheless, we recommend to check the oil level on a regular basis with the dipstick.

Coolant

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The coolant cools the engine and consists of water and coolant additive (with additives that protect the cooling system against corrosion and prevents furring).

The coolant additive level in the coolant must be at least 60 %.

The correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive should be checked if necessary by a specialist garage or corrected if necessary.

WARNING

- The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 183.
- Never open the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir while the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurized - risk of scalding or injury from being splashed with coolant!
- To protect against coolant splashes, cover the cap with a cloth when opening.
- Coolant and coolant fumes are harmful - avoid contact with the coolant. If your eyes or skin come into contact with the coolant, immediately wash the affected area for a few minutes long with a lot of water and seek medical advice if required.

CAUTION

Do not cover the radiator or fit any parts (e.g. auxiliary lights) in front of the air intakes - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

Checking and refilling

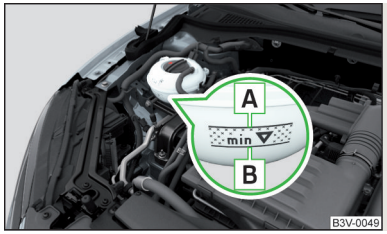

Fig. 220
Coolant expansion reservoir

Read and observe and on page 187 first.

Check the coolant under the following conditions and refill.

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine is not warm (if the engine is warm, the test results could be inaccurate).
✓ The engine is turned off.

Check the coolant level - the coolant level must be between the marks A and B » Fig. 220. If the coolant level is below the mark B, refill the coolant.

Refilling

The coolant expansion tank must always contain a small amount of coolant » .

› Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion tank and unscrew the cap **carefully**.
› Always top up using the correct specification of fluids.
› Turn the cap until it clicks into place.

The **specification** of the coolant is shown on the coolant expansion reservoir» Fig. 220.

If no specified coolant is available, use only distilled or demineralised water and have the mixing ratio of water and coolant additive corrected by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

CAUTION

- If the expansion tank is empty, do not top up with coolant. The system could aerate - risk of damaging the engine! Do not drive the vehicle! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- Do not fill the coolant above the mark A » Fig. 220. When it heats up, the coolant could press out of the cooling system - there is a risk of damage to the engine parts.
- If it is not possible to refill the coolant, do not continue driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- A coolant additive which does not correspond to the correct specification can reduce the anti-corrosion effect of the cooling system - there is a risk of damage to the cooling system and the engine.
- If water other than distilled (demineralised) water is used, then have the coolant replaced by a specialist garage - there is a risk of engine damage.
- A loss of coolant could be due to **leaks** in the cooling system - there is a risk of engine damage. Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Note

Too low coolant level is indicated in the instrument cluster by the warning light and shown by the message » page 37. We still recommend inspecting the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

Brake fluid

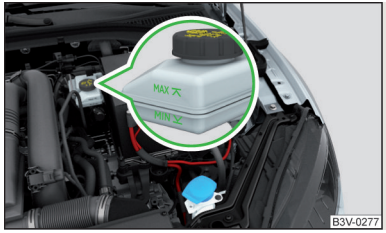

Fig. 221
Brake fluid reservoir

Check the brake fluid under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.

✓ The engine is turned off.

Check brake fluid level - the brake fluid level must be between the markings "MIN" and "MAX"» Fig. 221.

Specification - the brake fluid must comply with **VW 501 14** standard (this standard meets the requirements of FMVSS 116 DOT4).

WARNING

- The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 183.
- There may be an indication of a leak in the brake system, however, if the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the "MIN" » Fig. 221 marking. Do not continue driving - there is risk of accident! Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note

- The brake fluid is changed as part of a compulsory inspection service.
- Too low brake fluid level is indicated by the warning light being shown on the display of the instrument cluster as well as the corresponding message » page 33. We therefore recommend that you check the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

Vehicle battery

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The vehicle battery represents a power source for the motor to start and for the supply of electrical consumers in the car.

Automatic consumer shut-off - discharge protection of the vehicle battery
The on-board power supply tries as follows to avoid draining the vehicle battery when it is heavily loaded.

- By increasing the engine idle speed.
- By limiting the power of certain consumers.
- By turning off some consumers (heated seats, heated rear window) for as long as necessary.

Warning symbols on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Meaning
	Always wear eye protection.
	Battery acid is severely caustic. Always wear gloves and eye protection.
	Keep fire, sparks, open flames and lit cigarettes well clear of the vehicle battery.
	When charging the vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced.
	Keep children away from the vehicle battery.

WARNING

Battery acid is highly corrosive - risk of injury, irritation or poisoning! Corrosive vapours in the air irritate and damage the respiratory tract and the eyes. The following guidelines must be observed.
- Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling the vehicle battery.
- If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolyte fluid, immediately wash the affected area for a few minutes with plenty of water. Seek medical assistance if required.
- Keep the vehicle battery away from people who are not completely independent, especially children.
- Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings.

WARNING

When working on the car battery, there is the risk of explosion, fire, injury or irritation! The following guidelines must be observed.
- Avoid smoking, the use of open flames or light and any activities that could cause sparks.
- **A discharged vehicle battery can freeze slightly.** Never charge a frozen or thawed vehicle battery. Replace a frozen vehicle battery.
- Never use a damaged vehicle battery – risk of explosion!
- Do not connect the battery terminals with each other by bridging the two poles of a short circuit.

CAUTION

Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the bodywork – risk of damage to the paintwork.

Note
- We recommend having all work on the vehicle battery carried out by a specialist garage.
- You should replace batteries older than 5 years.

Check condition

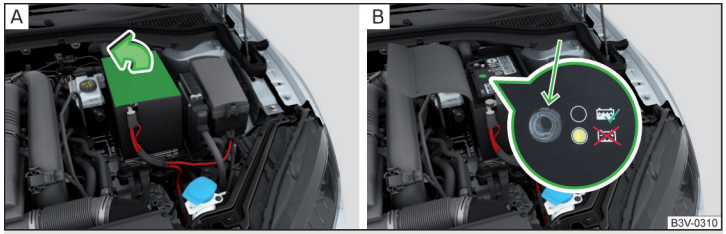

Fig. 222 **Vehicle battery: Open the cover / acid level indicator**

Read and observe and on page 189 first.

The battery status is checked regularly by a specialist garage as part of the inspection service.

Check the acid level

For car batteries with acid level indicator, use the colouration of the display to check the acid level. In vehicle batteries with the designation **"AGM"** there is no acid level examination.

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle battery may be provided with a cover, this can be opened in the direction of arrow » Fig. 222 - A.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. Therefore, carefully knock on the display » Fig. 222 - B.

Black colour - electrolyte level is correct.

Colourless or light yellow colour - electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

Battery discharge
Frequent short journeys will not sufficiently recharge the car battery.

The battery capacity decreases at low temperatures.

If the vehicle is not used for longer than 3 to 4 weeks, then disconnect the negative terminal ⊖ or charge the battery constantly with a very low charging current.

Charging

Read and observe ! and ! on page 189 first.

Only charge the vehicle battery when the ignition and all consumers are switched off.

Refer to the instructions of the charger manufacturer.

Charging
- For vehicles **with** START-STOP system or auxiliary heating, connect the ⊕ terminal of the charger on the ⊕ pole of the battery, the ⊖ terminal of the charger to the earth point of the engine » page 203.
- For vehicles **without** START-STOP system or auxiliary heating, connect the terminals of the charger to the corresponding battery poles (⊕ at ⊕. ⊖ at ⊖).
- Plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch on the device.
- After charging has been successful: Switch off the charger and remove the mains cable from the power socket.
- Disconnect the terminals of the charger from the vehicle battery.

A charging current of 0.1 multiple of the total vehicle battery capacity (or lower) must be used until full charging is achieved.

! WARNING
- When charging the vehicle battery, hydrogen is released - risk of explosion. An explosion can be caused from sparks or connection or releasing the cable plug while the ignition is on.
- The so-called "quick charging" of the vehicle battery is **dangerous** and requires a special charger and specialist knowledge. We therefore recommend that vehicle batteries are "quick-charged" by a specialist garage.

Connect/disconnect and replace

Read and observe ! and ! on page 189 first.

The new vehicle battery must have the same capacity, voltage, current and the same size as the original Battery.

We recommend you have the battery **replaced** by a specialist garage.

- To **disconnect** the battery, switch off the ignition and disconnect first the negative terminal ⊖, and only after this the positive ⊕.
- To **connect** the battery, first connect the positive terminal ⊕, and only after this the negative terminal ⊖.

After disconnecting and re-connecting the vehicle battery, the following functions or devices are partially or completely inoperative.

Function / device	Operating measure
Power windows	» page 60
Panorama sliding/tilting roof	» page 62
Sun screen	» page 63
Time setting	» page 41

! CAUTION
- Disconnect the vehicle battery only with the ignition turned off - there is a risk of damaging the electrical system of the vehicle.
- Before disconnecting the battery, close the electric tailgate, all the windows, the sliding / tilting roof and the electric sunshade - otherwise malfunctions of equipment elements may occur.
- Under no circumstances must the connection cables be connected incorrectly – risk of fire.

i Note
After disconnecting and re-connecting the vehicle battery, we recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist to ensure that the full functionality of all electrical systems is guaranteed.

Wheels

Wheels and tyres

Information for using wheels

New tyres, during the first 500 km, new tyres do not offer optimum grip and appropriate care should therefore be taken when driving.

Always fit **tyres with a greater profile depth** on the front wheels.

Wheels and bolts are matched to each other in terms of design. We recommend that you use wheel rims and wheel bolts from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Always **store wheels or tyres**in a cool, dry and, where possible, dark place. The tyres themselves should be stored standing.

Service life of the tyres
Tyres age and lose their original characteristics, even if they are not being used. Therefore, we recommend not using tyres that are more than 6 years old.

The manufacturing date is specified on the tyre sidewall (possibly on the **inside**). For example, **DOT ... 10 16...** means, for example, that the tyre was manufactured in the 10th week of 2016.

Tyre damage
We recommend checking your tyres and wheel rims for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges, etc.) on a regular basis.

Remove any foreign objects in the tyre tread immediately (e.g. small stones).

Foreign bodies which **have penetrated into the tyre** (e.g. screws or nails) should not be removed. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Installation of new tyres
Only fit radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern on one axle on all 4 wheels.

When mounting new tires the tires have to be replaced axle by axle.

Unidirectional tyres
The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by **arrows on the wall of the tyre**.

The specified running direction must be strictly adhered to, otherwise the following tyre characteristics may be degraded.
- ▸ Driving stability.
- ▸ Traction.
- ▸ Tyre noise and tyre wear.

Tyres with increased puncture resistance
Some vehicles may be fitted with tyres at the factory that have increased puncture resistance (so-called "SEAL" tyres). For some countries, vehicles are equipped with "SEAL" tyres delivered without a spare wheel and appropriate tools.

If "SEAL"tyres are replaced with standard tyres, the vehicle must be retrofitted with a puncture repair kit or spare wheel and appropriate hand tools.

WARNING
- Never use tyres if you do not know anything about the condition and age.
- Never drive with damaged tyres – risk of accident.

CAUTION
- The tyres must be protected from contact with substances such as oil, grease and fuel, which could damage them. If the tyres come into contact with these substances, then we recommend you have this checked out in a specialist workshop.
- Do not use rims with ground or polished surface in winter conditions - there is a risk of wheel damage (e.g. from the road grit).

Note
- We recommend that any work on the wheels or tyres is carried out by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that you use wheel rims, tyres, full wheel trims and snow chains from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Tyre pressure

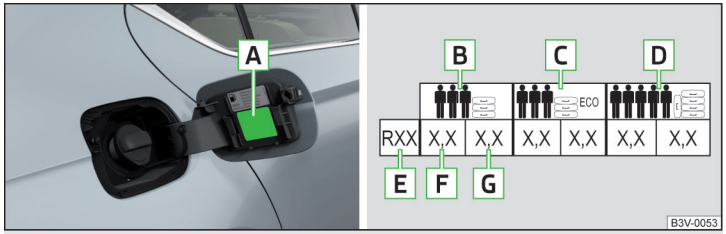

Fig. 223 **Label with a table of tyre sizes and tyre pressure value / inflate tyres**

The prescribed tyre inflation is on the sticker with pictograms A » Fig. 223 (for some countries, the pictograms are replaced with a text).

Tyre pressure is always to match the load.

- B Inflation pressure for half load
- C Inflation pressure for environmentally friendly operation (slightly lower fuel consumption and emissions)
- D Inflation pressure for full load
- E Tyre diameter in inches
  This information serves merely as information for the prescribed tyre pressure. This is not a list of shared tyre sizes for your vehicle. These are in the vehicle's technical documentation, in the declaration of conformity (in so-called COC document) and listed on the vehicle data » page 218.
- F Tyre pressure value on the front axle
- G Tyre pressure value on the rear axle

Check tyre pressures
Check the tyre pressure, including that of the spare wheel, at least once a month and also before setting off on a long journey.

Always check the inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, tyre pressure values must be saved each time the pressures are changed » page 164.

WARNING

- Do not drive with an incorrect tyre pressure - risk of accident.
- In the event of very fast pressure loss, e.g. in the event of sudden tyre damage, an attempt should be made to bring the vehicle carefully to a stop without sudden steering movements and without any hard braking.

Note

The declaration of conformity (COC document), can be obtained from a ŠKODA[1] partner.

Tyre wear and wheel change

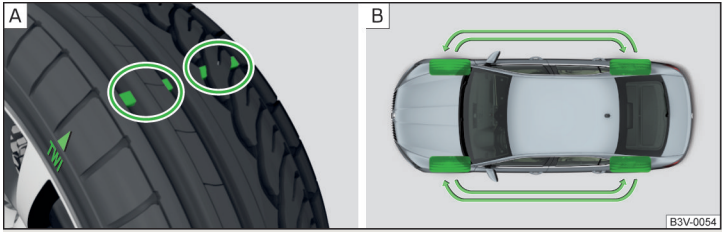

Fig. 224 **Tyre wear indicator / wheel change**

The **tyre wear** increases in the following circumstances.

- Incorrect tyre pressure.
- Driving style (e.g. fast cornering, rapid acceleration / deceleration).
- Incorrect balancing of wheels (have the wheels balanced after changing tyres / repair or with "restlessness" on the steering).
- Wheel alignment error.

Wear indicators are located in the profile of the tyres which display the permissible minimum tread depth » Fig. 224 - A. A tyre is to be regarded as worn out when this indicator is flush with the tread. Markings on the walls of the tyres with the letters "TWI", triangular symbols or other symbols identify △the position of the wear indicators.

For uniform wear on all tyres, we recommend that you **change** the **wheels** every 10 000 km according to the schedule » Fig. 224 - B.

[1] Only valid for some countries and some models.

WARNING

- Change when they are worn down to the wear indicators at the latest - risk of accident.
- Improper wheel alignment affects the driving behaviour - there is an accident.
- Unusual vibrations or "pulling" of the vehicle to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. Reduce speed and stop! If no tyre damage is evident, seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

Spare wheel

Use the emergency spare wheel only to reach the nearest specialist garage, as it is **not intended for permanent use**.

A warning label is displayed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel.

Please note the following if you intend to use the temporary spare wheel.

- Do not cover the signs.
- Be particularly observant when driving.
- Inflate the temporary spare wheel to the maximum inflation pressure for the vehicle » page 192 (the prescribed tyre pressure of the spare wheel R 18 is 4.2 bar).

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, save the tyre pressure values in the system» page 164.

WARNING

- Never drive with more than one spare wheel mounted!
- When driving with the temporary spare wheel at full throttle acceleration, avoid sharp braking and fast cornering.
- Do not use snow chains on the temporary spare wheel.
- Observe instructions on the warning sign of the emergency wheel.

Tyre marking

Explanation of tyre markings - e.g. 215/60 R 16 95 V

215	Tyre width in mm
60	Height/width ratio in %
R	Code letter for the type of tyre – **R**adial
16	Diameter of wheel in inches
95	load index
V	Speed symbol

Load index - indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre

load index	91	92	93	94	95	96	97	98	99
Load (In kg)	615	630	650	670	690	710	730	750	775

Speed symbol - indicates the maximum permissible speed for a vehicle fitted with tyres in the category concerned

speed symbol	M	T	U	H	V	W	Y
Maximum speed (in km/h)	130	190	200	210	240	270	300

WARNING

Never exceed the maximum permissible **load bearing capacity** and **speed** for the fitted tyres – risk of accident!

Operating in winter conditions

All-year (or "winter") tyres

All-year or "winter" tyres (denoted by **M+S** or possibly a mountain peak / snowflake symbol) improve the performance of the vehicle in winter conditions.

For the best possible handling, use all-season or "winter" tyres on all four wheels with a minimum tread depth of 4 mm.

If using "winter" tyres, fit the summer tyres on again in good time as they provide better handling properties, a shorter braking distance, less tyre noise, and reduced tyre wear on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as at temperatures above 7 °C.

Speed symbol

All-season or "winter" tyres (marked with **M+S** and a peak/snowflake symbol) of a lower speed category than stated in the technical vehicle documentation can be used, provided the permissible maximum speed of these tyres is not exceeded even if the possible maximum speed of the vehicle is higher.

The speed limit for all-season or "winter"tyres can be adjusted in Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.

If tyres of a lower speed category than the specified top speed of the vehicle are fitted to the vehicle, then a warning label stating the maximum value of the mounted tyre speed rating must be fitted inside the vehicle in a visible place in the driver's field of vision[1].

Snow chains

The snow chains improve driving in wintry road conditions.

Remove the full wheel trims before installing the snow chains » page 198.

Only fit snow chains with links and locks no larger than 12 mm.

Snow chains must only be mounted on the front wheels and are applicable only for the following wheel / tyre combinations.

Applies for 2.0 l/162, 206 kW TSI

Rim size	Impression depth D	Tyre size
6.5J x 17	41 mm	215/55 R17

Applies to the other engines

Rim size	Impression depth D	Tyre size
6.5J x 16	41 mm	215/60 R16
6.5J x 17	41 mm	215/55 R17

WARNING

Do not use chains on snow- and ice-free routes - the driving behaviour may be affected and there is a risk of a puncture.

[1] Applies to some countries.

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment and self-help

Emergency equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Placement of the first aid kit and warning triangle

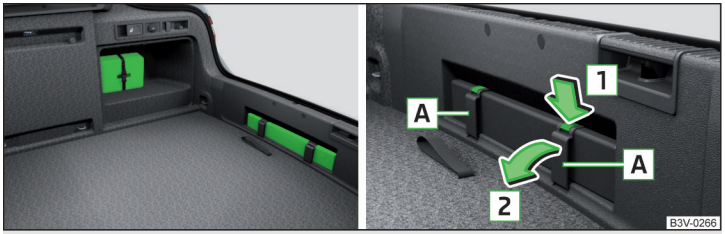

Fig. 225 **Placing the first aid kit and the warning triangle - variant 1 / release the warning triangle**

Fig. 226
Placement of the first aid kit and warning triangle - version 2

The following information applies for the first aid kit and warning triangle from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Placing the first-aid kit
The first-aid kit can be attached by a strap to the right-hand side of the boot » Fig. 225 or » Fig. 226.

Depending on the equipment fitted, in the same place a storage compartment may be located in which the first aid kit can be stowed.

Placing of the warning triangle - variant 1
The warning triangle can be inserted into the recess under the loading edge and secured with the fastener tape » Fig. 225.

› To **release**, press the clasp on the tape in the direction of arrow 1 fold open the belt A in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 225.
› To **secure**, fold up the belt A against the arrow direction 2 until it locks into place.

Warning triangle – version 2
The warning triangle can be stored in the recess under the loading edge » Fig. 226. Before it is taken out, the floor covering of the luggage compartment must be raised.

! WARNING
Properly secure the first aid kit and the warning triangle - there is a risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or a vehicle collision.

Placement of reflective vest

Fig. 227
Stowage compartment for the reflective vest in the front door

The reflective vest can be stowed in the storage compartment A inside the storage compartment of the front door » Fig. 227.

It is possible to store the reflective vests for the passengers on the rear seat in the storage compartment in the rear doors.

Fire extinguisher

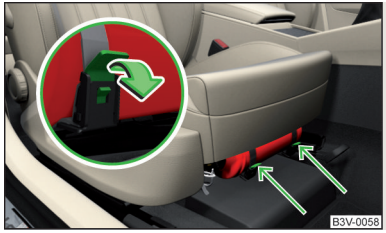

Fig. 228
Release the fire extinguisher

The fire extinguisher is attached by two straps in a bracket under the front passenger's seat.

› To **remove** the fire extinguisher, release the safety catches on the two belts in the direction of arrow » Fig. 228 and remove the fire extinguisher.
› To **secure**, place the fire extinguisher back in the mount and secure with the belts.

The Owner´s Manual is fitted next to the fire extinguisher.

Pay attention to the expiration date of the fire extinguisher. After this date, the correct function of the device is not guaranteed.

WARNING

Always properly secure the fire extinguisher - there is a risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or a vehicle collision.

Vehicle tool kit

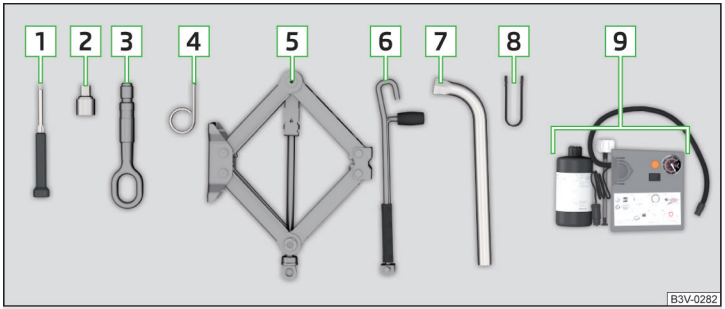

Fig. 229 **Vehicle tool kit**

The box containing the vehicle tool kit is located in the stowage compartment for the spare wheel, and can be secured with a tape depending on the equipment fitted.

Depending on the vehicle configuration, it may not contain all the components listed in the on-board tool kit.

1 Screwdriver
2 Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts
3 Towing eye
4 Clamps for removing the wheel trims
5 Jack with sign
6 Crank for the jack
7 Wheel wrench
8 Extraction pliers for the wheel bolt caps
9 Breakdown kit

WARNING

▪ The factory-supplied lifting jack is only intended for your model of vehicle. Under no circumstances attempt to lift other vehicles or loads with this – there is a risk of injury.
▪ Always securely stow the tool in the box and make sure that it is secured to the spare wheel using the tape - there is a risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or a vehicle collision.

CAUTION

Before stowing in the box with the tool kit, screw the jack back to its starting position - there is a risk of damaging the box.

Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the jack or the log folder.

Changing a wheel

Preliminary work

For safety's sake, the following instructions must be observed before changing a wheel on the road.

- As far as possible, park the vehicle far away from the traffic flow - find a place with a flat and firm surface.
- Switch off the engine.
- For vehicles with **manual transmission**, select 1st **gear**.
- For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
- Switch on the parking brake.
- Position the hazard warning system and the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
- **All the occupants should get out of the vehicle.** The passengers should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance) while the wheel is being changed.
- Uncouple any trailers.

Changing a wheel

- Remove the spare wheel » page 198.
- Remove the full wheel trim » page 198 or caps » page 198.
- First of all, slacken the anti-theft wheel bolt » page 199and then loosen all the other wheel bolts » page 199 ».
- Jack up the vehicle until the wheel that needs changing is clear of the ground » page 199.
- Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.).
- Remove the wheel carefully.
- Attach the spare wheel and slightly screw on the wheel bolts.
- Lower the vehicle.
- Tighten the wheel bolts opposite each other using the wheel wrench ("alternating crosswise")» page 199. Tighten the anti-theft wheel bolt last » page 199.
- Replace the wheel trim » page 198and the caps » page 198.

When fitting unidirectional tyres, ensure that the direction of rotation is correct » page 191.

All bolts must be clean and must turn easily. If the screws are corroded and difficult to move, then these must be replaced.

WARNING

- Undo the wheel bolts just a little (about one turn) while the vehicle is not jacked up. Otherwise, the wheel could come off and fall down – there is a risk of injury.
- Under no circumstances grease or oil the wheel bolts - risk of accident!

Subsequent steps

After changing the wheel, the following work must be carried out.

- Stow the replaced wheel in the well under the floor covering of the luggage compartment and secure with a locking screw » page 198.
- Stow the tool kit in the space provided and secure using the band.
- Check and, if necessary, adjust the tyre pressure on the assembled wheel, and, for vehicle with tyre pressure monitoring, save the tyre pressure values in the system » page 164.
- Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible. The prescribed tightening torque is **140 Nm**.

Replace the damaged wheel or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

WARNING

A tightening torque which is too high can damage the bolts and threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rim. Too low tightening torque, the wheels may fall off while driving - risk of an accident. Drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed until the tightening torque has been checked.

Removing /stowing the spare wheel

Fig. 230
Take out wheel

The spare wheel is located in a well under the floor covering in the luggage compartment and is fixed in place with a fastening screw.

Take out wheel

› Lift up the floor in the luggage compartment.
› Loosen the retaining belt and take out the box with the tool kit.
› Unscrew the locking screw in the direction of arrow » Fig. 230 and the remove the wheel.

Store wheel away

› Place the wheel into the wheel well with the wheel rim pointing downward.
› Pull the fixing band through the opposite holes in the wheel rim.
› Screw the locking screw against the direction of arrow until it stops » Fig. 230.
› Replace the box with the tool kit into the wheel and secure it with the tape.
› Fold back the floor in the luggage compartment.

Full wheel trim

Removing the trim

› The clamps for removing the full wheel trims hang on the edge of the full wheel trim.
› Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Installing the trim

› Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening.
› Then press the trim into the wheel rim until its entire circumference locks correctly in place.

The back of the wheel trim supplied by the factory or from the ŠKODA Original Accessories shows the position for the anti-theft wheel bolt. When using the anti-theft wheel bolt, this is to be fitted in this point » .

WARNING

If wheel trims are fitted, an adequate flow of air must be assured in order to cool the brake system - otherwise, risk of accident.

CAUTION

▪ If the wheel trim is set outside the position marked for the anti-theft wheel bolt, there is a risk of damaging the wheel trim.
▪ Use only manual pressure and do not hit the full wheel trim – there is a risk of damaging the trim.

Note

We recommend that you use hub caps from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Wheel bolts

Fig. 231
Remove the cap

› To **remove the cap**, insert the extraction pliers up to the stop on the cap and pull this in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 231.
› To **install**, insert the cap up to the stop on the wheel bolt.

Anti-theft wheel bolts

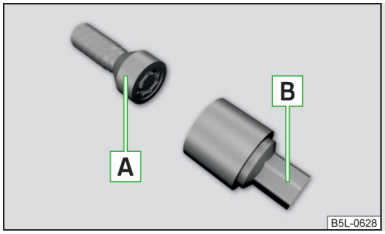

Fig. 232
Anti-theft wheel bolt and upper section

The anti-theft wheel bolts protect the wheels from theft. The upper section B » Fig. 232 must be used to **loosen/tighten** these.

› Insert the upper section B » Fig. 232 on the anti-theft wheel bolt A until it stops.
› Insert the wrench on the attachment B until it stops and loose/tighten the wheel bolt.
› Removing the upper section.

The upper section for the anti-theft wheel bolts must always be kept in the vehicle in preparation for a possible wheel change.

With wheel trims supplied at the factory or from ŠKODA Original Accessories, the position of the anti-theft wheel bolt is marked on the back of the wheel trim » page 198.

Note

The upper section and the anti-theft wheel bolts are provided with a code number. This is used to obtain a replacement upper piece from the ŠKODA Genuine Accessories.

Loosening/tightening wheel bolts

Fig. 233
Loosening the wheel bolts

› Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt to the stop. Use the associated upper section for the anti-theft wheel bolts » Fig. 232 *on page 199*.
› To **loosen the screws**, hold the wrench end and turn the screw about **one** turn in the direction of arrow » Fig. 233.
› To **tighten the screws**, hold the wrench end and turn the screw against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 233, until it is tight.

WARNING

If it proves difficult to undo the bolts, carefully apply pressure to the end of the wrench with your **foot**. Keep hold of the vehicle when doing so, and make sure you keep your footing - risk of accident.

Raising the vehicle

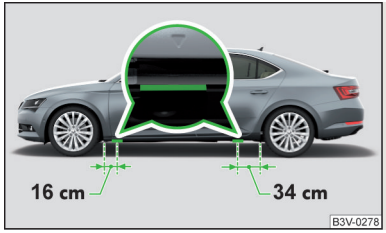

Fig. 234
Jacking points for the jack

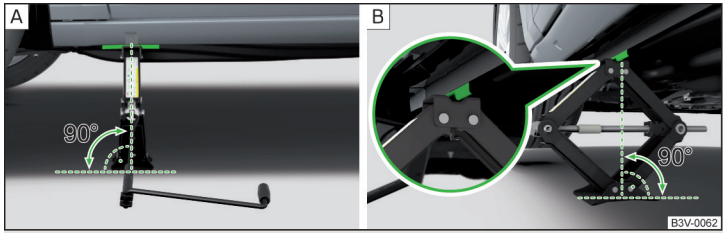

Fig. 235 **Attach lifting jack**

The procedure for lifting the vehicle is valid for all body versions.

Before the vehicle is raised, the safety instructions must be observed » !.

Use the jack from the tool kit to raise the vehicle. Position the jack at the jacking point closest to the flat tyre.

The jacking points are located on the lower sill » Fig. 234.

› Insert the crank 6 into the mount on the jack 5 » page 196.
› Support the base plate of the jack with its full area resting on level ground and ensure that the jack is located in a vertical position at the jacking point » Fig. 235 - A.
› Use the crank to raise the jack until its claw encloses the bar » Fig. 235 - B.
› Continue to lift the vehicle until the wheel is just off the floor.

! WARNING

Observe the following instructions, otherwise there is risk of injury.
- Secure the vehicle from unexpectedly rolling away.
- Always ensure the base plate of the lifting jack cannot slip.
  - Provide a wide and stable base under the jack on loose surfaces (e.g. such as gravel).
  - Create a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber floor mat) under the jack on a smooth surface (e.g. cobblestones).
- Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Never position any body parts, such as arms or legs, under the vehicle, while the vehicle is raised with a lifting jack.
- When the vehicle is raised, never start the engine.

! CAUTION

It is important to ensure that the jack is correctly attached to the bar of the lower beam, as otherwise there is a risk of damage to the vehicle.

Puncture repair kit

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The following information applies to the factory-fitted puncture repair kit.

Use the puncture repair kit to seal tyre punctures with a diameter of up to about 4 mm.

Performing a repair with the breakdown kit **not at all intended to replace** a permanent repair on the tyre. Its purpose is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

Immediately replace the tyre that was repaired using the puncture repair kit, or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

Do not remove foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre (e.g. nails etc.).

Do **not use** the puncture repair kit in the following instances.
- The rim is damaged.
- The outside temperature is below -20 ° C.
- Tyre punctures of more than 4 mm.
- There is damage to the tyre wall.
- The expiration date (see inflation bottle) has passed.

! WARNING

- If the sealant comes into contact with skin, wash the affected area immediately.
- Observe the manufacturer's usage instructions for the breakdown kit.

Description of puncture repair kit

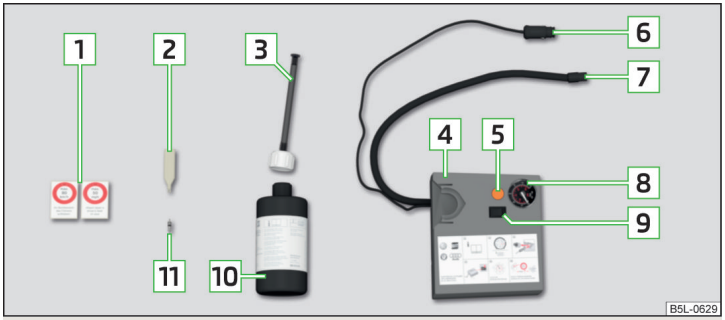

Fig. 236 **Description of puncture repair kit**

Read and observe ! on page 200 first.

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

1 Sticker with speed designation "max. 80 km/h"/"max. 50 mph"
2 Valve remover
3 Inflation hose with plug
4 Air compressor
5 Button for the tyre pressure reduction
6 12 volt cable connector
7 Tyre inflation hose
8 Tyre inflation pressure indicator
9 ON and OFF switch
10 Tyre inflation bottle with sealing agent
11 Replacement valve core

Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the air compressor or the log folder.

Preparing to use the puncture repair kit

Read and observe ! on page 200 first.

For safety's sake, the following instructions must be observed before performing a wheel repair the road.

› As far as possible, park the vehicle far away from the traffic flow - find a place with a flat and firm surface.
› Switch off the engine.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, select 1st **gear**.
› For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Switch on the parking brake.
› Position the hazard warning system and the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
› **All the occupants should get out of the vehicle.** The passengers should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance) while the wheel is being repaired.
› Uncouple any trailers.

Sealing and inflating tyres

Read and observe ! on page 200 first.

Sealing

› Unscrew the valve cap from the damaged tyre.
› Insert the valve remover 2 » Fig. 236 *on page 201* on the valve insert, so that the valve insert fits into the slot of the valve remover.
› Unscrew the valve insert and lay it on a clean surface (e.g. cloth, paper etc.).
› Forcefully shake the tyre inflater bottle 10 » Fig. 236 *on page 201* several times.
› Firmly screw the inflation hose 3 onto the tyre inflater bottle 10. The film on the cap is pierced automatically.
› Remove the plug from the inflation hose 3 and plug the open end fully onto the tyre valve.
› Hold the bottle 10 with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent from the tyre inflator bottle into the tyre.
› Remove the filler plug from the tyre valve.
› Screw in the valve insert using the valve remover 2.

Inflating

› Screw the air compressor tyre inflation hose 7 » Fig. 236 *on page 201* firmly onto the tyre valve.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, set the lever in the neutral position.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Start the engine.
› Plug the connector 6 into 12 volt socket » page 93.
› Switch on the air compressor with the ON and OFF switch 9.
› Once a tyre inflation pressure of 2.0-2.5 bar is reached, turn off the air compressor. Maximum run time of 6 minutes » !.
› If you cannot reach an air pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar, unscrew the tyre inflation hose 7 from the tyre valve.
› Drive the vehicle approx. 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to "distribute" in the tyre.
› Firmly screw the tyre inflation hose 7 back onto the tyre valve and repeat the inflation process.
› Stick the sticker 1 » Fig. 236 *on page 201* on the dashboard in the driver's field of view.

Once a tyre inflation pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar is achieved, continue the journey at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

! WARNING

- If the tyre does not inflate at least. 2.0 bar, the damage is too great. The sealing agent cannot be used to seal the tyre. Do not drive the vehicle! Seek help from a specialist garage.
- The tyre inflation hose and air compressor may get hot as the tyre is being inflated – risk of burning.

! CAUTION

Switch off the air compressor after running 6 minutes at the most – risk of overheating! Allow the air compressor to cool a few minutes before switching it on again.

Information for driving with repaired tyres

Read and observe ! on page 200 first.

The inflation pressure of the repaired tyre must be checked after driving for 10 minutes.

If the tyre inflation pressure is 1.3 bar or less

› The tyre cannot be properly sealed with the breakdown kit. **Do not drive the vehicle!** Seek help from a specialist garage.

If the tyre inflation pressure is 1.3 bar or more

› Set the tyre pressure back to the correct value » page 192.
› Continue driving carefully to the nearest specialist garage at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

! WARNING

A tyre filled with sealant has the same driving characteristics as a standard tyre. The following guidelines must be observed.
- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.

Jump-starting

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

! WARNING

- The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 183.
- When handling the vehicle battery, the following warnings must be observed » page 188.
- A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C. If the battery is frozen, do not carry out a jump start with the battery of another vehicle – risk of explosion!
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with an acid level that is too low – risk of explosion and caustic burns!

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle

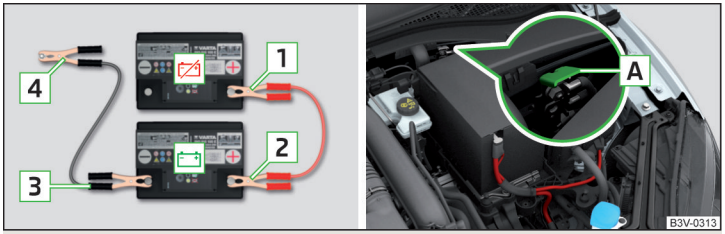

Fig. 237 **Jump-starting: ▱ - discharged battery, ▭ - current-giving battery / ground point of the engine with the START-STOP system**

Read and observe ! on page 202 first.

If it is not possible to start the engine due to a discharged vehicle battery, the battery of another vehicle can be used to start the engine. Only use jump-start cables which have an adequately large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps.

The **rated voltage** of the two batteries must be 12V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the current-giving battery must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged battery in your vehicle.

The jump-start cables must be attached in the following sequence.

- Attach clamp 1 to the positive terminal of the discharged battery.
- Attach clamp 2 to the positive terminal of the current-giving battery.
- Attach clamp 3 to the negative terminal of the current-giving battery.
- For vehicles **with** the START-STOP system, secure the clamp 4 to the ground point of the engine A » Fig. 237.
- For vehicles **without** the START-STOP system, secure the clamp 4 to a solid metal part that is firmly attached to the engine block or secure to the engine block directly.

Starting engine

- Start the engine on the vehicle providing the power and allow it to idle.
- Start the engine in the vehicle with the discharged battery.
- If the engine does not start within 10 s, then cancel the starting procedure and repeat after half a minute.
- Remove the jump start cables in the **reverse** order as attachment.

! WARNING

- Never clamp the jump-start cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery - danger of explosion.
- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never touch each other – risk of short circuit!
- The jump-start cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle – risk of short circuit!
- Route the jumper cables so that they cannot be caught in rotating parts in the engine compartment - danger of injuries and the risk of vehicle damage.

Towing the vehicle

Information for the towing process

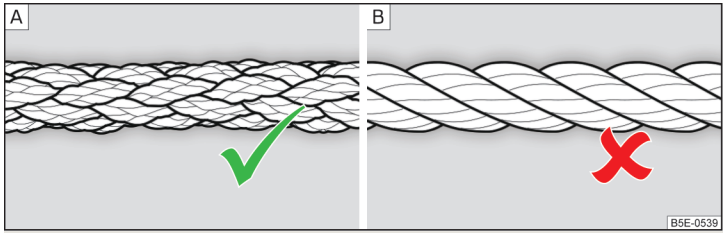

Fig. 238 **Braided tow rope / Spiral tow rope**

For towing using a tow rope, use only a braided synthetic fibre rope » Fig. 238 - A » !.

Attach the tow rope or the tow bar to the **towing eyes at the front** » page 204, **towing eyes at the rear** » page 205 or to the **towing device of the trailer device** » page 165.

Conditions for towing.

✓ **Cars with automatic gearboxes must not be towed with the rear wheels raised - there is a risk of gearbox damage!**

✓ If the gearbox has no oil, your vehicle must be towed with the front axle raised clear of the ground or on a breakdown vehicle or trailer.

✓ The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**.
✓ The vehicle must be transported on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer if it is not possible to tow in the vehicle in the way described or if the towing distance is greater than 50 km.

Driver of the tow vehicle
› On vehicles with **manual transmission**, engage gear slowly when starting.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, accelerate with particular care.
› Only then approach correctly when the rope is taut.

Driver of the towed vehicle
› If possible, the vehicle should be towed with the engine running. Operate the brake booster and power steering only if the engine is running, otherwise the brake pedal must be depressed more strongly and more power has to be directed to the steering.
› If it is not possible to start the engine, switch on the ignition so that the steering wheel is not locked and so that the turn signal lights, windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system can be used.
› Take the vehicle out of gear or move the selector lever into position **N** if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.
› Always keep the tow rope taut during the towing procedure.

WARNING
▪ Wound tow ropes must not be used for towing » Fig. 238- B, the towing eye may unscrew out of the vehicle - risk of accident.
▪ Ensure tow rope is not twisted - risk of accident.

CAUTION
▪ Do not tow-start the engine – risk of damaging the engine! The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 202, *Jump-starting*.
▪ In the case of off-road towing manoeuvres, for both vehicles there is the risk that the fastening parts could be overloaded and damaged.

Note
We recommend that you use the tow rope from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Front towing eye

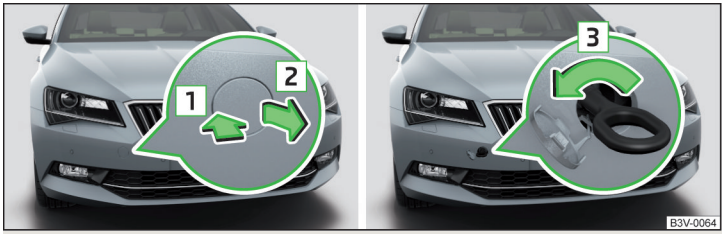

Fig. 239 **Remove cap / install towing eye**

Remove/insert cap
› To **remove**, press on the cap in the direction of the arrow 1 and remove this in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 239.
› To **insert**, insert the cap in arrow range 1 and then press on the opposite edge of the cap. The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye
› To **install**, screw in the towing eye by hand in the direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 239 until the stop» !.

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

› To **remove**, unscrew the towing against the direction of arrow 3.

WARNING
The towing eye must always be tightened, otherwise the towing eye may break during the towing.

Towing eye rear

Fig. 240 **Remove cap / install towing eye**

Remove/insert cap

› To **remove**, press on the cap in the direction of the arrow 1 and remove this in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 240.

› To **insert**, insert the cap in arrow range 1 and then press on the opposite edge of the cap. The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye

› To **install**, screw in the towing eye by hand in the direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 240 until the stop» !.

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

› To **remove**, unscrew the towing against the direction of arrow 3.

Vehicles with a trailer device

For vehicles with factory-fitted towing device, at the back there is no mount for a screw-in towing eye. Use the detachable ball rod for towing » page 165, *Hitch*.

! WARNING

The towing eye must always be tightened, otherwise the towing eye may break during the towing.

Remote control and removable light - replacing the battery/batteries

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

! CAUTION

- The replacement battery/batteries must comply with the original specification.
- Pay attention to the correct polarity when changing the rechargeable batteries.

i Note

- We recommend having the faulty battery/batteries replaced by a specialist garage.
- If a key has an affixed decorative cover, this will be destroyed when the battery is replaced. A replacement cover can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Key with fold-out key bit

Fig. 241 **Remove the cover/remove the battery**

Read and observe ! on page 205 first.

› Fold out the key bit.

› Press off the battery cover A » Fig. 241 with your thumb or by using a flat screwdriver in region B.
› Open the battery in the direction of the arrow 1.
› Remove the discharged battery in the direction of arrow 2 and install a new battery.
› Insert the battery cover A and press it down until it clicks audibly into place.

The key has to be synchronised if the vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the key after replacing the battery » page 54.

KESSY key

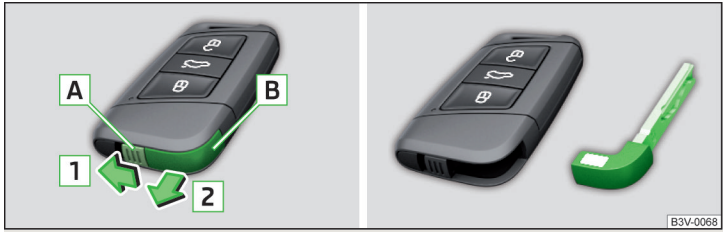

Fig. 242 **Remove emergency key**

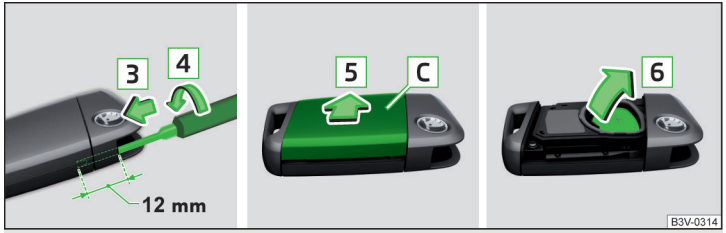

Fig. 243 **Replacing the battery**

Read and observe ! on page 205 first.

› Unlock the locking lug A in the direction of arrow 1 and remove the emergency key B in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 242.
› Insert a narrow screwdriver (3 mm wide) approximately 12 mm into the opening in the direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 243.
› Turn the screwdriver in the direction of arrow 4 until the battery cover is released.
› Push the battery cover C in the direction of arrow 5.
› Remove the discharged battery in the direction of arrow 6 and install a new battery.
› Insert the battery cover C and press it down until it clicks audibly into place.

The key has to be synchronised if the vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the key after replacing the battery » page 54.

Remote control of the auxiliary heating

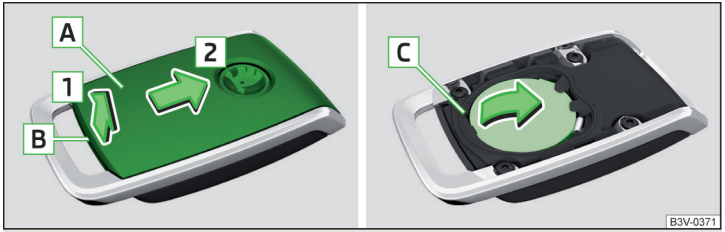

Fig. 244 **Radio remote control: Battery cover**

Read and observe ! on page 205 first.

› Use a thin screwdriver to remove the cover A in the area B » Fig. 244.
› Open the cover in the direction of arrow 1 and push out in the direction of arrow 2.
› Use the screwdriver to remove and replace the battery in the area C.
› Insert the battery cover in the opposite direction to arrow 2 until it audibly clicks into place.

Removable light

Fig. 245
Locking clip on the battery cover

Read and observe ! on page 205 first.

› Lever off the cover for the rechargeable batteries with a narrow and pointed object from the area of the lock clips A » Fig. 245.
› Replace the batteries.
› Insert the cover for the rechargeable batteries and press it down until it clicks into place.

! CAUTION

If an incorrect battery type is used or a non-rechargeable battery, there is a risk of damaging the light and the vehicle's electrical system.

Emergency unlocking / unlocking of doors

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unlocking/locking the driver's door

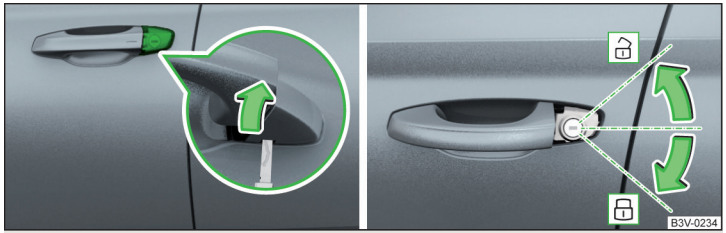

Fig. 246 **Handle on the driver´s door: unfold/lock and unlock the lock cover**

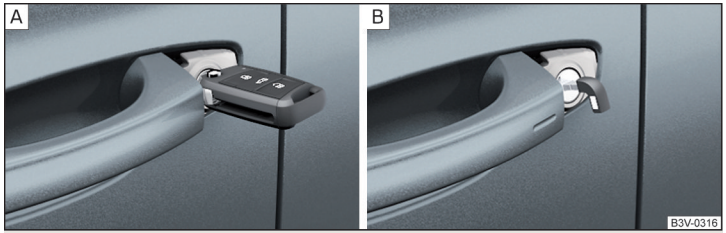

Fig. 247 **Handle on the driver's door: key with fold-out key bit / KESSY emergency key**

The driver's door can be emergency unlocked / emergency locked using the key via the lock cylinder.

› Pull on the door handle and hold.
› Insert the key into the recess on the lower side of the cover and fold up the cover in the direction of arrow » Fig. 246.
› Release the door handle.
› For vehicles with **LHD**, insert the key with the fold-out key bit **with the buttons facing upwards** » Fig. 247 - A into the lock cylinder and unlock/lock the vehicle.
› For vehicles with **RHD**, insert the key with the fold-out key bit **with the buttons facing downwards** into the lock and unlock/lock the vehicle.

› On vehicles with the **KESSY system**, hold the emergency key with the handle facing downwards » Fig. 247 - B into the lock cylinder and unlock / lock the vehicle.
› Pull on the door handle and hold.
› Replace the cover.

CAUTION

Make sure you do not damage the paint when performing an emergency locking/unlocking.

Locking the door without the locking cylinder

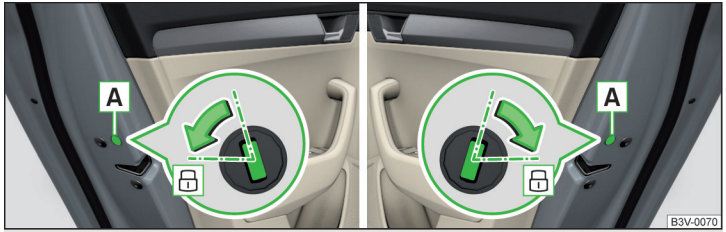

Fig. 248 **Emergency locking: Left/right rear door**

› Open the corresponding back door remove the trim A » Fig. 248.
› Insert the key into the slot and turn in the direction of the arrow (sprung position).
› Replace the cover A.

After closing, the door is locked.

Unlock the boot lid

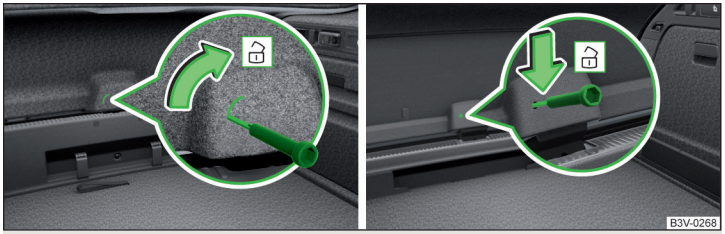

Fig. 249 **Unlock flap: variant 1/2**

The boot lid can be unlocked manually from inside.

› Insert a screwdriver or similar tool into the recess or the opening in the trim » Fig. 249 as far as the stop.
› Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.

Selector lever-emergency unlocking

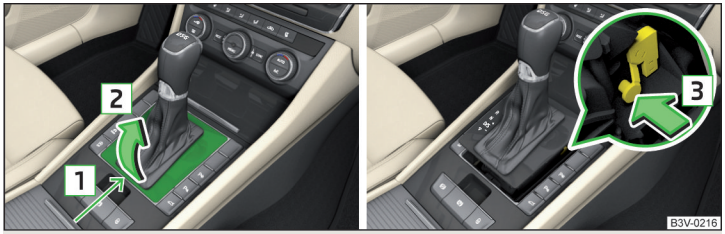

Fig. 250 **Remove / release the selector lever**

› Switch on the parking brake.
› Insert a flat-head screwdriver or similar tool into the gap in the arrow area 1 » Fig. 250 and lift the cover in arrow direction 2.
› Press on the yellow plastic part in the direction of arrow 3, simultaneously press the lock button in the selector lever handle and put the lever in position **N**.

If the selector lever is moved again to position **P**, it is once again blocked.

CAUTION

Make sure when lifting not to damage cover parts by the screwdriver in the shift lever environment.

Replacing windscreen wiper blades

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons.

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades

Fig. 251
Setting the service position for the wiper arms

Fig. 252 **Replace windscreen wiper blade**

Read and observe ! on page 209 first.

Before replacing the windscreen wiper blade, put the windscreen wiper arms into the service position.

Setting the service position

› Switch the ignition on and off again.
› Within 10 seconds, push the lever in the direction of arrow » Fig. 251 and hold for approximately 2 seconds.

Removing the wiper blade

› Lift the wiper arm from the windscreen in the direction of 1 » Fig. 252.
› Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
› Hold the wiper arm and press the safety catch A in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 3.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade

› Push the windscreen wiper blade in the opposite direction of the arrow 3 until it locks into place. Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the windscreen wiper arm back to the windscreen.
› Turn on the ignition and press the lever into the direction of the arrow » Fig. 251.

Move the windscreen wiper arms into the home position.

Replacing the rear window wiper blade

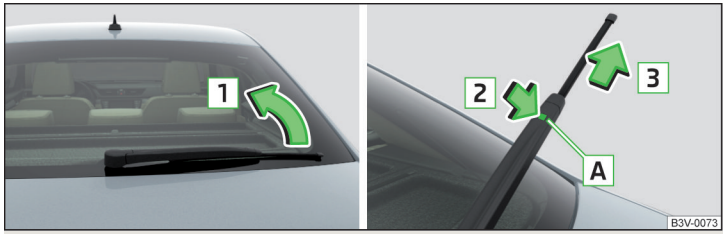

Fig. 253 **Replace the rear window wiper blade**

Read and observe ! on page 209 first.

Removing the wiper blade

› Lift the window wiper arm » page 210 from the window in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 253.
› Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
› Hold the wiper arm and press the safety catch A in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 3.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade

› Push the windscreen wiper blade in the opposite direction of the arrow 3 until it locks into place. Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the windscreen wiper arm back to the windscreen.

Fuses and light bulbs

Fuses

Introduction

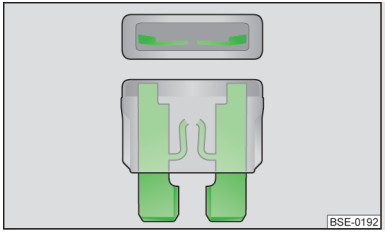

Fig. 254
Blown fuse

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses. A blown fuse is recognisable by the molten metal strip » Fig. 254.

! WARNING

Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 183.

! CAUTION

- Replace the faulty fuse with a new one of the **same** amperage.
- If a newly inserted fuse blows after a short time, then seek the assistance of a specialist garage.
- Do "not repair" the fuses and do not replace them with stronger ones - it can cause a fire and could damage parts of the electrical system.

i Note

- We recommend always carrying replacement fuses in the vehicle.
- There can be several power consuming devices for one fuse. Multiple fuses may exist for a single power consuming device.

Fuses in the dashboard - LHD

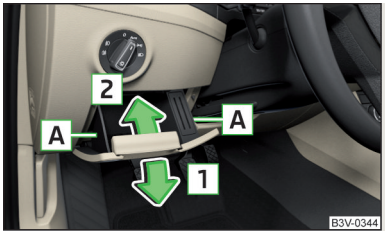

Fig. 255
Storage compartment on the driver's side

Read and observe ! and ! on page 210 first.

On left-hand drive vehicles, the fuse box is located behind the storage compartment in the left-hand section of the dash panel.

Replacing fuses

› Remove the ignition key, turn off the lights and all electrical consumers.
› Open the storage compartment » page 85.
› Hold the storage compartment at the side in the region A and pull to fold down in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 255.
› Remove the plastic clip under the cover of the fuse box in the engine compartment » Fig. 259 *on page 213*.
› Use the clip to pull out the faulty fuse and then insert a new fuse.
› Stow the clip back in the original position.
› Close the storage compartment by pushing in the direction of arrow 2.

Fuses in the dashboard - RHD

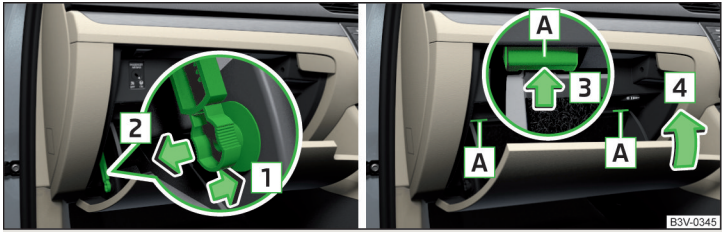

Fig. 256 **Storage compartment on the front passenger side**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 210 first.

On right-hand drive vehicles, the fuse box is located on the front passenger's side behind the stowage compartment in the left-hand section of the dash panel.

Fold down the storage compartment and replace the fuse

› Remove the ignition key, turn off the lights and all electrical consumers.
› Open the storage compartment on the front passenger side.
› Unlock the brake rod in the direction of arrow 1 and remove in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 256.
› Push the lugs A in the direction of arrow 3 and the storage compartment folds down.
› Remove the plastic clip under the cover of the fuse box in the engine compartment » Fig. 259 *on page 213*.
› Use the clip to pull out the faulty fuse and then insert a new fuse.
› Stow the clip back in the original position.

Fold back the storage compartment

› Raise the storage compartment in the direction of the arrow 4.
› Overcome the resistance of the detents A.
› Insert the brake rod against the direction of arrow 2 and lock against the direction of arrow 1.
› Close the storage compartment.

Fuse assignment in the dashboard

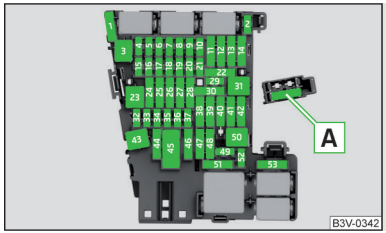

Fig. 257
Fuses

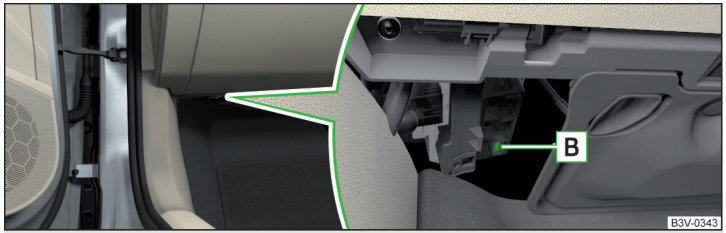

Fig. 258 **Multifunction security: RHD**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 210 first.

No.	Consumer
1	Not assigned
2	Not assigned
3	Voltage stabilizer for taxi vehicles
4	Not assigned
5	Databus
6	Automatic gearbox
7	Air conditioning, heating, receiver for the remote control for the auxiliary heating, heated rear window, heated windscreen, clock
8	Light switch, rain sensor, diagnostic connector, parking brake, lighting of the instrument cluster, sensor for the alarm system
9	USB socket
10	Touchscreen, TV tuner
11	Left side belt tensioner
12	Radio
13	Shock absorber setting
14	Air blower for air conditioning,heating
15	Electric steering lock
16	Phonebox
17	Instrument cluster, emergency operation
18	Reversing camera
19	KESSY

No.	Consumer
20	SCR
21	All-wheel drive, air compressor (Green Line)
22	Towing hitch
23	Light - right
24	Panorama roof
25	Central locking - driver's door and rear left door, exterior mirror driver's side - heating, fold-in function, setting the mirror surface
26	Heated front seats
27	Music amplifier
28	Trailer device - electrical outlet
29	Operating lever underneath the steering wheel
30	12-volt socket in luggage compartment
31	Light - left
32	Parking aid (Park Assist)
33	Airbag switch for hazard warning lights
34	TCS, ESC, Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator, air conditioning, reversing light switch, mirror with automatic blackout, START-STOP, heated rear seats, parking brake, light switch
35	AFS headlights, diagnostic connector, camera, radar, voltage stabilizer for taxi vehicles
36	Headlight right
37	Headlight left
38	Trailer device - electrical outlet
39	Central locking - front passenger door and right rear door, front passenger side mirrors - heating, fold-in function, setting the mirror surface
40	12-volt power socket
41	Right side belt tensioner
42	Boot lid, headlight washers, windscreen washer system
43	Xenon headlights, interior lighting
44	Trailer device - electrical outlet
45	Electrically adjustable seats
46	230-Volt power socket

No.	Consumer
47	Rear window wiper
48	Blind spot detection
49	Engine starting, clutch pedal switch
50	Opening the boot lid
51	Heating of the rear seats
52	Heated front seats
53	Heated rear window
A » Fig. 257	Multifunctional unit for taxi vehicles - LHD
B » Fig. 258	Multifunctional unit for taxi vehicles - RHD

Fuses in the engine compartment

Fig. 259 **Fuse box cover: removing cover / plastic clip for fuses**

Read and observe and on page 210 first.

Replacing fuses

› Remove the ignition key, turn off the lights and all electrical consumers.
› Press together the lock buttons of the cover simultaneously in the direction of arrow 1 and remove the cover in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 259.
› Replace the appropriate fuse .
› Replace the cover, push the lock buttons of the cover together and lock.

CAUTION

The cover of the fuse box in the engine compartment must always be used correctly, otherwise water may penetrate into the fuse box – there is a danger of damage to the vehicle!

Fuse assignment in the engine compartment

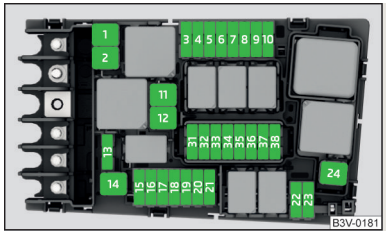

Fig. 260 **Fuses**

Read and observe and on page 210 first.

No.	Consumer
1	ESC, parking brake
2	ESC
3	Engine control system
4	Radiator fan, control valve for fuel pressure, relay for electric auxiliary heating
5	Ignition
6	Brake sensor
7	Radiator shutters, coolant pump
8	Lambda probe
9	Coolant pump, ignition, preheating unit, air flow meter
10	Fuel pump
11	Electrical auxiliary heating
12	Electrical auxiliary heating
13	Automatic gearbox
14	Heated windscreen
15	Horn
16	Ignition

No.	Consumer
17	ESC, engine control unit, main relay coil
18	Databus, battery data module
19	Windscreen wipers
20	Anti-theft alarm
21	Not assigned
22	Engine control system, voltage stabilizer for taxi vehicles
23	Starter
24	Electrical auxiliary heating
31	Not assigned
32	Not assigned
33	SCR
34	Not assigned
35	Not assigned
36	Not assigned
37	Aux. heating
38	Not assigned

Bulbs

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

For this reason, we recommend having bulbs replaced by a specialist garage or seeking other expert help in the event of any uncertainties.

- ▸ Switch off the ignition and all of the lights before replacing a bulb.
- ▸ Faulty bulbs must only be replaced with the same type of bulbs. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.

We recommend having the headlight settings checked by a specialist garage after replacing a bulb in the low, high or fog beam.

In the case of failure of a Xenon gas discharge bulb or an LED diode, visit a specialist garage.

WARNING

- ▪ Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 183.
- ▪ Accidents can be caused if the road in front of the vehicle is not sufficiently illuminated and the vehicle cannot or can only be seen with difficulty by other road users.
- ▪ H7 and H8 bulbs are pressurised and may burst when changing the bulb - risk of injury! We therefore recommended wearing gloves and safety glasses when changing a bulb.
- ▪ Do not carry out any work on the xenon gas discharge lamps - risk of death!

CAUTION

- ▪ Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, napkin, or similar.
- ▪ The cap of the filament bulb must always be seated correctly in the headlight, otherwise this may allow water and debris to enter the headlight - risk of damage to the headlights.

Note

- ▪ This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is possible to replace the bulbs on your own without any complications arising. Other bulbs must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- ▪ We recommend that a box of replacement bulbs always be carried in the vehicle.

Bulb arrangement in the headlights

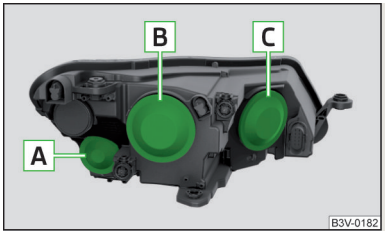

Fig. 261
Left headlight

Read and observe ! and ! on page 214 first.

The vehicle is equipped with headlights with halogen lamps or with a xenon discharge lamp and an LED lighting element.

Bulb arrangement » Fig. 261

A Flashing
B Low beam with halogen bulb or Xenon gas discharge bulb
C Main beam

Replacing a bulb for low beam and main beam (halogen headlights)

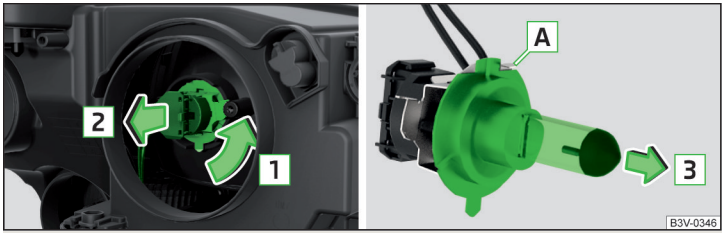

Fig. 262 **Replacing the bulb for low beam and main beam**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 214 first.

› Remove the protective caps B and C » Fig. 261 *on page 215*.
› Turn the holder with the bulb in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 262.
› Remove the holder with the bulb in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Insert a new bulb into the connector so that the lug A on the connector snaps into the groove on the bulb.
› Insert the connector with the new bulb into the headlight in the opposite direction to the arrow 2.
› Turn the connector with the new bulb in the opposite direction to the arrow 1 until it stops.
› Use the protective caps B and C » Fig. 261 *on page 215*.

Bulb for turn signal switch (halogen headlight)

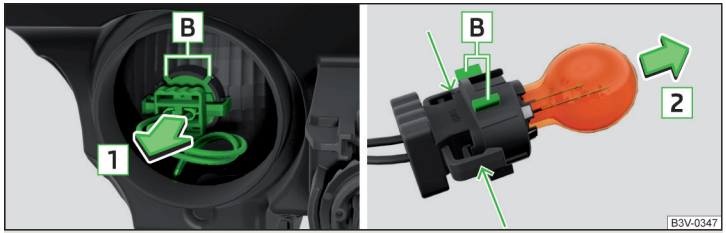

Fig. 263 **Changing the bulb for the turn signal light**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 214 first.

› Remove the protective cap A » Fig. 261 *on page 215*.
› Remove the bulb holder with the bulb by jiggling it out in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 263.
› Hold the socket with the bulb at the position shown by the arrows.
› Remove the faulty bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Push a new bulb into the bulb holder up to the stop.
› Slide the socket with the bulb with the fixing lug B upwards so that it fits into the recess on the reflector.
› Fit the protective cap A » Fig. 261 *on page 215*.

Changing light bulbs for fog lights

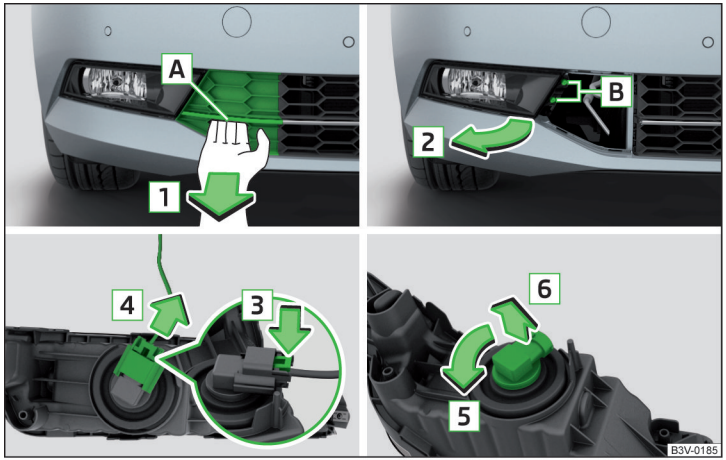

Fig. 264 **Remove the number plate light / replace the bulb**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 214 first.

Remove the protective grille and headlight

› Insert your finger in the hole A and remove the grille by pulling in direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 264.
› Unscrew the screws B using the screwdriver from the tool kit.
› Remove the headlight in the direction of arrow 2.

Replacing the light bulb

› Press the latch on the connector in the direction of arrow 3.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 4.
› Turn the socket with the bulb to the stop in the direction of the arrow 5.
› Remove the socket with the bulb in the direction of arrow 6.
› Insert the new bulb into the headlight and turn counter to the direction of arrow 5 as far as the stop.
› Attach the connector.

Refit the headlight and grille

› Replace the fog light by inserting it in the opposite direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 264 and tighten.
› Insert the guard and push it gently until it locks into place.

Remove/insert the rear light

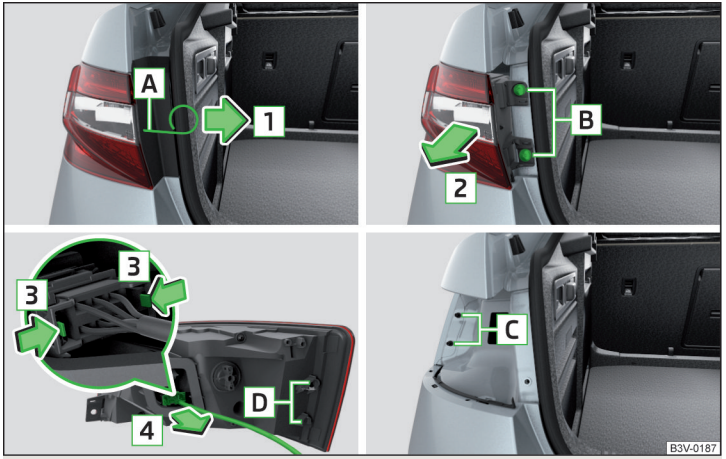

Fig. 265 **Remove light / pull out connector**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 214 first.

Removing

› Open the boot lid.
› Insert the clamps for removing the full wheel trims into opening A » Fig. 265.
› Remove the cover by pulling the hook in the direction of arrow 1.
› Unscrew the screws B using the screwdriver from the tool kit.
› Hold the light and carefully remove in the direction of arrow 2.
› Press the latches on the connector in the direction of arrow 3.
› Carefully remove the connector from the lamp assembly in the direction of the arrow 4.

Inserting

› Slide the plug in the opposite direction of the arrow 4 » Fig. 265 into the light. The locks on the plug must be inserted securely.
› Insert the light with the openings D onto the studs C in the body and carefully press in the light» !.
› Screw the tail lamp into place and install the cover. The cover must engage securely.

! CAUTION

▪ Ensure that when inserting the light the wiring harness between the body and the light is not jammed and the seal C » Fig. 266 *on page 217* is correctly inserted - there is a risk of water ingress and damage to the electrical installation.
▪ Ensure that the vehicle paintwork and the tail lamp are not damaged when removing and installing the rear light.

Replacing the bulbs in the rear light

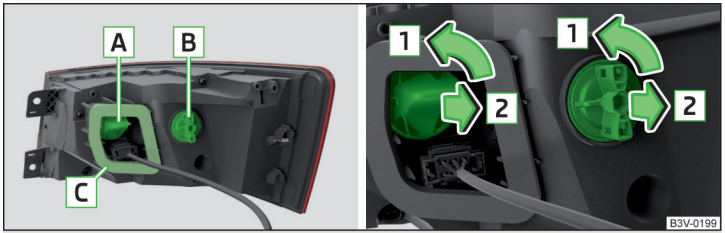

Fig. 266 **Tail light / bulb replacement**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 214 first.

› Turn the holder with the bulb A or B » Fig. 266 in the direction of the arrow 1.
› Remove the socket with the bulb from the lamp housing in the direction of arrow 2.
› Push the faulty bulb into the holder, turn in **anti** -clockwise direction up to the stop and remove.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the stop.
› Reinsert the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn in the opposite direction of the arrow 1 to the stop.

Technical data

Technical data

Basic vehicle data

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The listed performance values were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

The values given have been determined in accordance with the rules and conditions specified in statutory or technical regulations for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

The values listed are for the basic model without any optional equipment.

Vehicle data

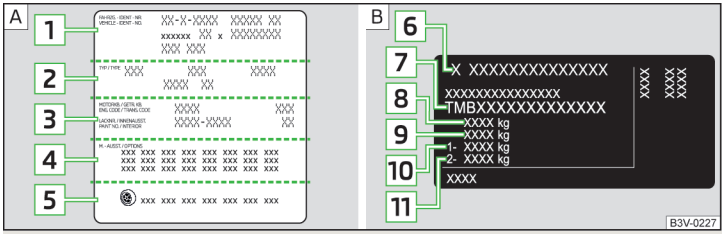

Fig. 267 **Vehicle data sticker/type plate**

Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data sticker » Fig. 267 - A is located on the flooring of the luggage compartment and is also fixed into the Owner's Manual.

The vehicle data sticker contains the following data.

1 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
2 Vehicle type
3 Gearbox code/paint number/interior equipment/engine output/engine code
4 Partial vehicle description
5 Approved tyre diameter in inches[1)]

The approved tyres and rim sizes for your vehicle are listed in the vehicle's technical documentation (the so called COC document) and this also states the declaration of conformity.

Type plate

The type plate » Fig. 267 - B is located at the bottom of the B-pillar on the right driver's side.

The type plate contains the following data.

6 Vehicle manufacturers
7 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
8 Maximum permissible gross weight
9 Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)

1) Only valid for some countries.

10 Maximum permissible front axle load
11 Maximum permissible rear axle load

Vehicle identification number (VIN)
The vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) is stamped into the engine compartment on the right hand suspension strut dome. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left hand edge below the windscreen (together with a VIN bar code), and on the type plate.

The VIN number can also be displayed in Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual - Infotainment*.

Engine number
The engine number (three-digit identifier and serial number) is stamped on the engine block.

Supplementary Information (applies to Russia)
The full type approval number of the means of transport is indicated in the registration documents, field 17.

Maximum permissible towed weight
The listed maximum allowable trailer weight is only valid for altitudes up to 1000 m above sea level.

The engine output falls as altitude increases, as does the vehicle's climbing power. Therefore, for every additional 1000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10%.

The towed weight is made up of the actual weights of the loaded towing vehicle and the loaded trailer.

! WARNING
Do not exceed the specified maximum permissible weights – risk of accident and damage!

Operating weight

This value is only a guide value and corresponds to the lowest possible operating weight without further weight-reducing equipment (e.g. air conditioning, spare wheel etc.). The operating weight also includes the weight of the driver (75 kg), the weight of the operating fluids, the tool kit, and a fuel tank filled to 90 % capacity.

Operating weight - Superb

Engine	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)
1.4 l/92 kW TSI	MG	1375
1.4 l/110 kW TSI ACT	MG	1395
	MG 4x4	1505
	DSG	1425
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	MG	1388
	DSG	1418
1.8 ltr./132 kW TSI	MG	1465
	DSG	1485
2.0 l/162 kW TSI	DSG (EU6)	1505
	DSG (EU4)	1500
2.0 l/206 kW TSI	DSG 4x4	1615
1.6 l/88 kW TDI CR	MG	1465
	MG (Green Line)	1485
	DSG	1480
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	MG	1485
	MG 4x4	1605
	DSG	1500
2.0 l/130 kW TDI CR	DSG	1515
2.0 l/140 kW TDI CR	MG	1505
	DSG	1555
	DSG 4x4	1615

Operating weight - Superb Estate

Engine	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)
1.4 l/92 kW TSI	MG	1395
1.4 l/110 kW TSI ACT	MG	1415
	MG 4x4	1525
	DSG	1445
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	MG	1408
	DSG	1438

Engine	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)
1.8 ltr./132 kW TSI	MG	1485
	DSG	1505
2.0 l/162 kW TSI	DSG (EU6)	1525
	DSG (EU4)	1520
2.0 l/206 kW TSI	DSG 4x4	1635
1.6 l/88 kW TDI CR	MG	1485
	MG (Green Line)	1505
	DSG	1500
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	MG	1505
	MG 4x4	1625
	DSG	1520
2.0 l/130 kW TDI CR	DSG	1535
2.0 l/140 kW TDI CR	MG	1525
	DSG	1575
	DSG 4x4	1635

Note

If required, you can find out the precise weight of your vehicle at a specialist garage.

Payload

It is possible to calculate the approximate maximum payload from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight.

The payload consists of the following weights.

- The weight of the passengers.
- The weight of all items of luggage and other loads.
- The weight of the roof load including the roof rack system.
- The weight of the equipment that is excluded from the operating weight.
- Trailer draw bar load when towing a trailer (max. 90 kg).

Measurement of fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions according to ECE Regulations and EU Directives

The data on fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions were not available at the time of going to press.

The data on fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions are given on the ŠKODA websites or in the sales and technical vehicle documentation.

The measurement of the intra-urban cycle begins with a cold start of the engine. Afterwards urban driving is simulated.

In the extra-urban driving cycle, the vehicle is accelerated and decelerated in all gears, corresponding to daily routine driving conditions. The driving speed varies between 0 and 120 km/h.

The calculation of the combined fuel consumption considers a weighting of about 37 % for the intra-urban cycle and 63 % for the extra-urban cycle.

Note

- The fuel consumption and emission levels given on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation have been established in accordance with rules and under conditions that are set out by legal or technical rules for the determination of operational and technical data of motor vehicles.
- Depending on the extent of the equipment, the driving style, traffic conditions, weather influences and vehicle condition, consumption values can in practice result in fuel economy figures in the use of the vehicle that differ from the fuel consumption valueslisted on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation.

Dimensions - Superb

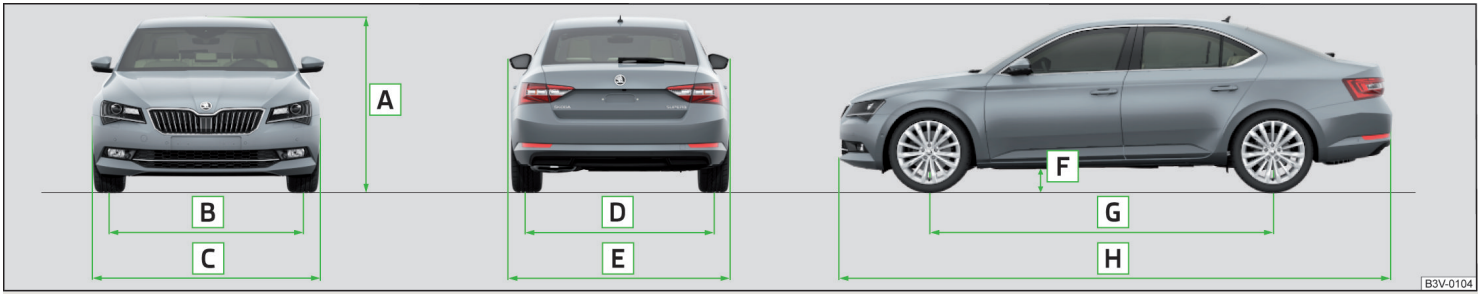

Fig. 268 **Vehicle dimensions**

Vehicle dimensions for operating weight without driver (in mm)

» Fig. 268	Specification		Value
A	Height		1468
B	Front track	Basic dimension	1584
		Vehicles with the 2.0 l/162 kW TSI and 2.0 l/206 kW TSI engine	1586
C	Width		1864
D	Rear track	Basic dimension	1572
		Vehicles with the 2.0 l/162 kW TSI and 2.0 l/206 kW TSI engine	1574
E	Width including exterior mirror		2031
F	Clearance		149/148[a)]
G	Wheel base		2841
H	Length		4861

[a)] Applies to Superb 4 x 4 vehicles.

Dimensions - Superb estate

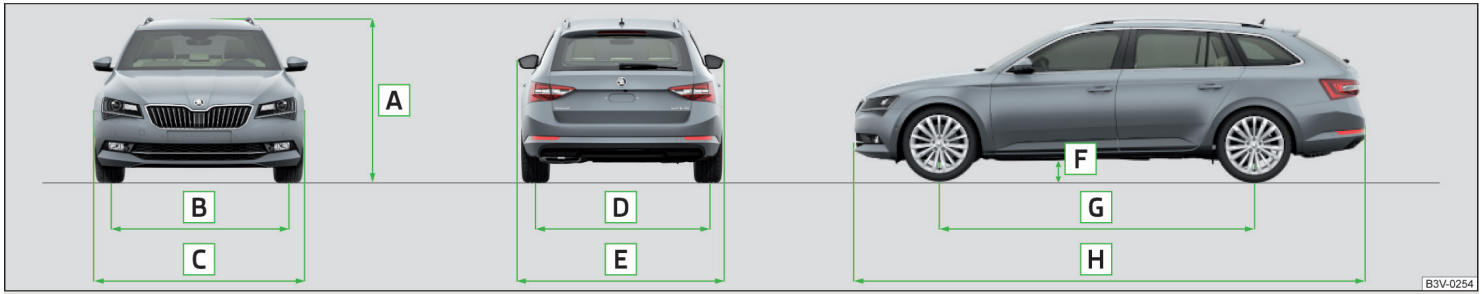

Fig. 269 **Vehicle dimensions**

Vehicle dimensions for operating weight without driver (in mm)

» Fig. 269	Specification		Value
A	Height		1477
B	Front track	Basic dimension	1584
		Vehicles with the 2.0 l/162 kW TSI and 2.0 l/206 kW TSI engine	1586
C	Width		1864
D	Rear track	Basic dimension	1572
		Vehicles with the 2.0 l/162 kW TSI and 2.0 l/206 kW TSI engine	1574
E	Width including exterior mirror		2031
F	Clearance		149/148[a)]
G	Wheel base		2841
H	Length		4856

[a)] Does not apply to Superb Estate 4 x 4 vehicles.

Overhang angle

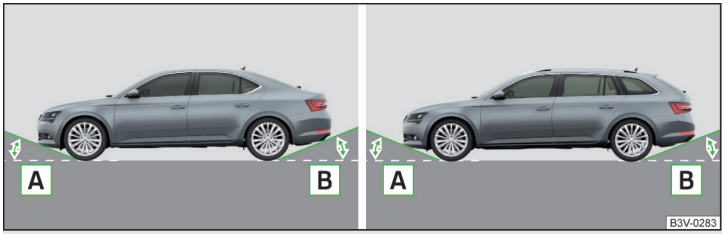

Fig. 270 **Overhand angle: Superb / Superb Combi**

Angle » Fig. 270

A Approach angle

B Departure angle

The values shown indicate the maximum incline of an embankment, up which the vehicle can drive at a slow speed without collision of the bumper or underbody. The values listed represent the maximum axle load at the front and rear.

Overhang angle (°) - Superb

» Fig. 270	A	B
Basic dimension	14.0/14.1[a)]	12.2
Vehicles with off-road package	15.1/15.2[a)]	12.4/12.3[a)]
Vehicles with SPORT package	12.7/13.0[a)]	12.4/12.3[a)]
Vehicles with DCC	13.2	12.5/12.3[a)]

a) Applies to Superb 4 x 4 vehicles.

Overhang angle (°) - Superb Estate

» Fig. 270	A	B
Basic dimension	14.0/14.1[a)]	12.2/12.0[a)]
Vehicles with off-road package	15.1/15.2[a)]	12.4/12.1[a)]
Vehicles with SPORT package	12.7/13.0[a)]	12.4/12.2[a)]
Vehicles with DCC	13.2	12.4/12.3[a)]

a) Does not apply to Superb Estate 4 x 4 vehicles.

Vehicle-specific details per engine type

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The values given have been determined in accordance with the rules and conditions specified in statutory or technical regulations for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

The emissions standard is detailed in the technical vehicle documentation as well as in the certificate of conformity (COC document), which can be obtained from a ŠKODA partner[a].

[a] Only valid for some countries and some models.

1.4 l/92 kW TSI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	92 / 5000-6000	
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	200 / 1400-4000	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1395	
Body	**Superb**	**Superb Combi**
Transmission	**MG**	**MG**
Top speed (km/h)	208	206
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	9.9	10.0

1.4 l/110 kW TSI ACT engine

Output (kW/rpm)	110 / 5000-6000					
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	250 / 1500-3500					
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1395					
Body	**Superb**			**Superb Estate**		
Transmission	**MG**	**MG 4x4**	**DSG**	**MG**	**MG 4x4**	**DSG**
Top speed (km/h)	220	215	220	218	213	218
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.6	9.0	8.8	8.7	9.1	8.9

1.4 l/110 kW TSI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	110 / 5000-6000			
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	250 / 1500-3500			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1395			
Body	**Superb**		**Superb Estate**	
Transmission	**MG**	**DSG**	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speed (km/h)	220	220	218	218
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.6	8.8	8.7	8.9

1.8 l/132 kW TSI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	MG	132 / 4000-6200		
	DSG	132 / 5100-6200		
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	MG	320 / 1450-3900		
	DSG	250 / 1250-5000		
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1798			
Body	**Superb**		**Superb Estate**	
Transmission	**MG**	**DSG**	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speed (km/h)	232	232	230	230
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.0	8.1	8.1	8.2

2.0 l/162 kW TSI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	162 / 4500-6200	
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	350 / 1500-4400	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1984	
Body	**Superb**	**Superb Combi**
Transmission	**DSG**	**DSG**
Top speed (km/h)	245	243
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	7.0	7.1

2.0 l/206 kW TSI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	206 / 5600-6500	
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	350 / 1700-5600	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1984	
Body	**Superb**	**Superb Combi**
Transmission	**DSG 4x4**	**DSG 4x4**
Top speed (km/h)	250	250
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	5.8	5.8

1.6 l/88 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW/rpm)	88 / 3600-4000					
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	250 / 1600-3250					
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1598					
Body	**Superb**			**Superb Estate**		
Transmission	**MG**	**MG (Green Line)**	**DSG**	**MG**	**MG (Green Line)**	**DSG**
Top speed (km/h)	206	209	206	204	206	204
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.9	11.0	11.0	11.0	11.1	11.1

2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW/rpm)	110 / 3500-4000					
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	340 / 1750-3000					
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968					
Body	**Superb**			**Superb Estate**		
Transmission	**MG**	**MG 4x4**	**DSG**	**MG**	**MG 4x4**	**DSG**
Top speed (km/h)	220	215	218	218	213	216
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.8	9.0	8.9	8.9	9.1	9.0

2.0 l/130 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW/rpm)	130 / 3700-4000	
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	380 / 1750-3400	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968	
Body	**Superb**	**Superb Combi**
Transmission	**DSG**	**DSG**
Top speed (km/h)	222	220
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.4	8.5

2.0 l/140 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW/rpm)	140 / 3500-4000					
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	400 / 1750-3250					
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968					
Body	**Superb**			**Superb Estate**		
Transmission	**MG**	**DSG**	**DSG 4x4**	**MG**	**DSG**	**DSG 4x4**
Top speed (km/h)	237	235	230	235	233	228
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.0	7.7	7.6	8.1	7.8	7.7

Index

C

F

G

H

I

S

T

U

V

W

X

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

ŠKODA Service App – ŠKODA service in your pocket

The application ŠKODA service is provided for Smartphones with Android or iPhone systems. This task is mainly to help you as a customer of ŠKODA AUTO in difficult situations when on the road.

My Dealer – select your preferred dealer and read about their current offer or ŠKODA news.

Assistance – Contact a breakdown recovery service, find the nearest dealer when on the road and use the service Parking Helper.

My car – the complete operating instructions and a summary list of all the warning lights for a quick overview, a guide for media systems and Quick Tips.

Ready for download in the AppStore for iOS and Google Play for Android.

ŠKODA Manual App – get to know your vehicle

The application ŠKODA Manual is designed for tablet users with the systems Android and iOS, who have an interest in getting to know the ŠKODA vehicle brand or already have one. The application contains the complete version of the electronic manual for all current models of the ŠKODA brand. Furthermore, it contains a list of all warning lights, a guide for media systems as well as a picture diagram of the Quick Tips.

Some of the main functions of the application include:

› Easy content navigation
› Easy content reading
› Full text search through the entire manual
› Tab for quick access to favourite chapter

Available on the App Store

GET IT ON Google play

www.skoda-auto.com

Návod k obsluze
Superb anglicky 05.2016
S75.5610.05.20
3V0012720AD